Bit by Bit

كتب فى اللغة الإنجليزية

بتصريح وتحت إشراف

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني

PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

الصف السادس الإبتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

6th 2025

PRIMARY SIX

SECOND TERM



دار غزة

للطبع والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Contents

Part 1

- Writing Skills
- Specification for Sixth Year Primary

Part 2

Theme 3: I discover myself

Unit 7 Amazing artifacts
Unit 8 Toys and games
Unit 9 What's the story?
Review 3

Theme 4: Myself and others

Unit 10 Free as a bird
Unit 11 How can I help?
Unit 12 Fiction reader: Atemu and Amethyst
Review 4

Part 3

- Listening texts





Writing Skills



How to write a paragraph
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٥٠ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى نكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

أولا ترتيب الجملة

1 فاعل			2 فعل		3 تكملة الجملة
اسم شخص	مكان	شيء	مضارع بسيط/ مستمر	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	ظرف مكان - زمان/صفة/حال
Amged	Garden	Car	is going / go / goes	was doing / did	home / yesterday happy / well

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

فاعل + verb to be + صفة	He is excited.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Gamal is a teacher.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	She went to the park.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن	We are ready on Sunday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I help him.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	We get up at 6 o'clock.

1 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

Guiding questions

1- When's your birthday?
2- Where's your birthday?

Your birthday party

Yesterday was my birthday. I made a big party at my garden. I have a nice garden around my house. My mother prepared some sandwiches. My father bought a chocolate cake. I liked it very much. My friends came to the party. We sang songs and danced. We played video games and football. It was a nice day.



How to write an email
كيف تكتب إيميل

To: البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالمرسل إليه:

From: البريد الإلكترونى الخاص بالراسل:

Subject: موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:

Dear + اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you? I want to tell you about

تكتب هنا جمل عادية كإننا بنكتب براجراف عادى.

See you soon.

اسم الراسل

- اتبع الخطوات الآتية لكتابة بريد إلكترونى بشكل منظم:

١- فى السطر الأول من بريدك الإلكترونى أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب اسم المرسل إليه:

٢- فى السطر الثانى ابدأ بـ: "I'm happy to write to you."

"Thanks for writing to me."

٣- أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ:

"How are you?" / "How are things?" / "How's life?"

٤- اذكر سبب إرسالك للإيميل ولماذا كتبته:

I want to tell you about .

٥- يجب أن يحتوى بريدك الإلكترونى على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر من فكرة:

٦- عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "awesome" أو "cool"

٧- قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكترونى بعبارات مثل: "Write soon." أو "See you soon."

أو "Bye for you now." **أو** "Hope to hear from you soon."

لاحظ بعض التحويلات الآتية عند كتابة البريد الإلكترونى:

١- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة **him** أو**her** أو **them** قم بتحويلها فى الإيميل إلى كلمة **you**.

٢- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة **your** نحولها إلى كلمة **my**.

٣- إذا كان فى السؤال كلمة **you** نحولها إلى كلمة **I**.

• يأتى السؤال كالتالى:

Write an email of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

beaches - amazing

To your friend Hany to tell him about your **trip to Alexandria**. Your name is Emad and your email address is **emad17@yahoo.com** and your friend's email address is **hany33@gmail.com**.

New Message

To	(1) ايميل المرسل اليه ...	**Cc** **Bcc**
From	(2) ايميل الراسل ...	
Subject	(3) موضوع الرسالة ...	

(4) **Dear / Hi** اسم المرسل اليه **(Hany),**

جملة افتتاحية (5) ⟶ .....

موضوع الايميل (6) ⟶ .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

جملة ختامية (7) ⟶ .....

تحية الخاتمة (8) **Yours / Love**
اسم الراسل **(Emad)**

Send

لاحظ

إذا لم يكن بالسؤال عنوان البريد الاليكترونى الخاص بك وبصديقك
اكتب اسم صديقك فى To: واسمك فى From:



How to write a blog
كيف تكتب تدوينة

1 Write a blog of about FIFTY (50) words to your friend about your new school. Your name is Maha:

١- تاريخ اليوم

Maha's blog BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

٢- عنوان الموضوع

Tuesday, 5th August

My new school

٣- مقدمة افتتاحية



Dear Diary,
It was a nice day today. I went to a new school near my apartment.
My father had a new job in the Sixth of October City so, we moved to a new apartment. At first I was sad because I left my friends. My new school was bigger than my old school. I made new friends. They welcomed me and showed me my classroom. The teachers were kind and nice. I think that it's a special school. ☺

٤- رموز تعبيرية

٥- الصور



- خطوات كتابة التدوينة:

١- قم بكتابة تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة يومية جديدة.
٢- ثم قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب للموضوع الذى سنتحدث عنه.
٣- ابدأ اليومية بكتابة "Dear Diary".
٤- قم بوصف الأماكن والأحداث التى مرت عليك خلال اليوم بلغة غير رسمية.
٥- قم بوصف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
٦- يجب أن تتضمن اليومية على بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل "I" أو "my".
٧- قم باستخدام بعض الصور المرئية والرموز التعبيرية لتوصيل الفكرة بشكل سريع.
٨- أعط رأيك فى الموضوع الذى نتحدث عنه باستخدام بعض العبارات مثل:
"I think that ....." أو "In my opinion....."



How to write a diary entry
كيف تكتب مذكرة يومية

- خطوات كتابة المذكرة اليومية

- A diary has features that are different from other types of text:

- تحتوي المذكرة اليومية على سمات تختلف عن الأنواع الأخرى من النصوص:

- It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.

- إنها عادة تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة ، كل واحدة تدور حول ما حدث في يوم واحد.

- It is usually written in an informal style and uses first person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.).

- تكتب عادةً بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر الشخص الأول (المتكلم) (أنا ، نحن ، ملكي ، إلخ).

- It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.

- تصف عادةً أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.

- It usually describes people, places, and experiences.

- تصف عادةً الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

مثال لمذكرة يومية:

Dear Diary,

Today while I was cleaning my cupboard, I found some old pictures of me and my sisters. We were laughing a lot in this picture. I believe that it should be some really funny moment. Another funny picture, when I was hiding and eating chocolate from my father's pocket so that I don't have to share with anyone.

A picture of us was also there. It was on my sister's birthday. Some pictures made me laugh and some made me cry.

Gameela

Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) فى النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.....
- The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص

- هى النقطة الأساسية التى يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالا.
- الجمل الأخرى فى النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون فى أول جملة أو آخر جملة فى النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتى

- ما باللون الأحمر هى الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هى التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat is blue and red. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات فى جملة معينة فى القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.....' refers to .....

ثانيًا: أسئلة (open-ended) استفهامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات فى النص فى جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو اكثر

١- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسى بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

٢- حدد اهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ او الحيوان واستخدم اهم الافعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدى نفس المعنى.

٣- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية

٤- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية فى حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

نتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسى بالسائحين **tourists**

٢- أهم ما يخصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التى تعبر عن ذلك **come / see /visit**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- أهم شخص **My father**

٢- وأهم شئ يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.

Specifications for Sixth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف السادس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥

Marks: 30 Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (4 Marks)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

A text of about **SIXTY (60)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions **MCQs** with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

B- Reading (10 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (1.5 Marks)

Learners are given **THREE (3) MCQs** vocabulary items based on the Set Books. They are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5 Marks)

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **THREE (3)** deletions is provided. **FOUR (4)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FOUR** (4) words given. The first sentence should be written in full. **(Half a mark each)**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **NINETY (90)** to **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for Primary **SIX**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO (2) MCQs** with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(Half a mark each)

B: THREE (3) open-ended questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

(Two marks each)

C- Writing (16 Marks)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1 Mark)

TWO (2) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences.

(Half a mark each)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4 Marks)

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided.

Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. **(Two marks each)**

7 Punctuate the following: (4 marks)

TWO (2) simple statements (sentence **OR** question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. **(One mark each)**

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7 Marks)

Learners are asked to write not less than **FIFTY (50)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph - Email - Blog - Text message - Diary

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)

Theme 3

Unit 7

I discover myself

Amazing artifacts

قطع أثرية مذهلة



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen and read about artifacts in the Museum of Ancient History.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن القطع الأثرية في متحف التاريخ القديم.

2. Listen, read, research, and write about important ancient artifacts.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحث ويكتب عن القطع الأثرية القديمة المهمة.

3. Listen to a presentation about Ancient Egyptian metals.

- يستمع الطالب إلى عرض تقديمى عن المعادن في مصر القديمة.

4. Use the past simple.

- يستخدم الطالب زمن الماضي البسيط.

5. Do a quiz about Ancient Egyptian Artifacts.

- يقوم الطالب بحل اختبار قصير عن الآثار المصرية القديمة.

6. Read about animals in Ancient Egypt.

- يقرأ الطالب عن الحيوانات في مصر القديمة.

7. Use prepositions of place.

- يستخدم الطالب حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.

8. Say words with the sound /er/.

- يقول الطالب كلمات بها الصوت /er/.

9. Write a fact file about a metal or material in Ancient Egypt.

- يكتب الطالب ملف حقائق عن معدن أو مادة خام في مصر القديمة.

10. Research and write display boards for artifacts from Ancient Egypt.

- يجرى الطالب بحث ويكتب ألواح عرض للآثار من مصر القديمة.

Lesson 1 ★ A Visit to the Museum

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



ذهب **gold**



زجاج **glass**



صلصال **clay**



ورق البردى **papyrus**



ورق **paper**



حجر جرانيت **granite**

durable	صلب / قوى التحمل
fascinating	مبهر / خلاب

artifacts	قطع اثرية
preserve	يحفظ

Other words كلمات أخرى

reason	سبب
certain	معين / محدد
climate	مناخ
weather	طقس
material	مادة خام
valuable	قيم / ثمين
pots	أوانى

guide	مرشد سياحى
excited	متحمس
student	طالب
Ancient Egyptians	القدماء المصريين
condition	ظروف
Tutankhamun's tomb	مقبرة توت عنخ آمون

Adjectives صفات

interesting	مثير للاهتمام
dry	جاف
wet	رطب

close to	بالقرب من
hot	ساخن
cold	بارد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
damage	يتلف/ يدمر	damaged
help	يساعد	helped
preserve	يحفظ/ يصون	preserved
cover	يغطى	covered
last	يدوم	lasted

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
know	يعرف	knew
can	يستطيع	could
hear	يسمع	heard
keep	يحافظ	kept

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

welcome to	مرحبا في	happy about	سعيد بشأن
first of all	أولا / قبل أى شئ	last a long time	يستغرق وقت طويل
last forever	تدوم للأبد	that's why	لذلك

Study the following

1. I am your guide today.
   - أنا المرشد الخاص بكم اليوم.
2. We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
   - نحن متحمسون للتعلم عن القطع الاثرية المصرية القديمة.
3. What would you like to know?
   - ماذا تود أن تعرف؟
4. Well, first of all, why do we have so many artifacts?
   - حسنا، قبل أى شئ، لماذا لدينا آثار كثيرة جدا؟
5. That's an interesting question.
   - هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام .
6. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt.
   - نحن لدينا مناخ حار وجاف في مصر.
7. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time.
   - عرف المصريون القدماء أن هذه المواد الخام يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة.
8. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite.
   - لذلك بنى المصريون القدماء الاهرامات بحجر الجرانيت.
9. What other materials did they use?
   - ما هى المواد الخام الأخرى التي استخدموها؟
10. They used a lot of glass which last forever.
    - استخدم المصريون القدماء كثيرًا من الزجاج والذى يدوم للأبد.
11. I also heard they used a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's tomb.
    - سمعت أيضا أن المصريون القدماء استخدموا كثيرا من الذهب في مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

12 **The Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable.**

- أحب المصريون القدماء استخدام الذهب لأنه معدن قيم جدًا.

13 **It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.**

- إنه من الرائع أن تستمتع بالأشياء التي صنعها المصريون القدماء.

1 Listen and read. Why are Tamer and Tamara at the museum?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا تامر وتمارا في المتحف؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:

Mr Tarek : Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History.
My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.

Tamer : Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.

Tamara : We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts(1).

Mr Tarek : Great! What would you like to know?

Tamara : Well, first of all, why do we have so many artifacts?

Mr Tarek : That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate(2). We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve(3) them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite(4), a very hard and durable (5) stone.

Tamer : That's fascinating(6)! What other materials did they use?

Mr Tarek : They used a lot of glass(7), which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.

Tamer : I also heard they used a lot of gold(8) in Tutankhamun's tomb.

Mr Tarek : Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.

Tamer : I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.

Arabic Meaning

١- قطع أثرية
٢- مناخ
٣- يحفظ
٤- جرانيت
٥- صلب /قوى التحمل
٦- مبهر
٧- زجاج
٨- ذهب

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past. The Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest intact ship.

الأثر هو شيء صنعه البشر في الماضي. تعتبر مركب خوفو الشمسية أثر من آثار مصر القديمة. هي أقدم سفينة محفوظة سليمة في العالم.

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Samer went on a trip to the _____.
   - a Cairo Tower
   - b Pyramids
   - c Egyptian Museum
   - d station
2. The museum has a lot of _____.
   - a pens
   - b artifacts
   - c paper
   - d glass
3. The artifacts were made of _____.
   - a glass
   - b granite
   - c clay
   - d paper
4. The Ancient Egyptians were so _____.
   - a bad
   - b tall
   - c clever
   - d small

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ancient Egyptians made the Pyramids with _____. الجيزة - الحوامدية (2023)
   - a clay
   - b granite
   - c gold
   - d silver
2. Gold is a valuable and _____ metal. الدقهلية - طوخ (2023)
   - a durable
   - b liquid
   - c cheap
   - d dangerous
3. _____ is a very hard and durable stone. الشرقية - ديرب نجم (2024)
   - a Glass
   - b Clay
   - c Granite
   - d Wood
4. I visited the museum and I saw many _____ there. المنوفية - أشمون (2023)
   - a facts
   - b artifacts
   - c schools
   - d rivers

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

المنوفية - أشمون (2023)

Ancient Egyptians were great people. They made a lot of artifacts. They tried to preserve them. They used different materials to make these artifacts. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone. **They** also used glass to make a lot of artifacts. Ancient Egyptians also used a lot of paper. They made paper from papyrus. They also used clay which was found close to the River Nile to make pots. Ancient Egyptians used gold in many artifacts. Gold is a valuable metal.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is about _____.

a Ancient artifacts b weather
c paper d gold

2. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with _____.

a gold b granite c paper d clay

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did they find clay?_____

4. Why did the Ancient Egyptians use gold in artifacts?_____

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to?_____

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

الجيزة - أوسيم (2023)

1. Egyptians - The Ancient - to - liked - gold - use. _____

2. a hot, dry - We - climate- in -have -Egypt. _____

الفيوم - إطسا (2023)

3. do - have - Why - we - many - so - artifacts? _____

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

بني سويف (2024)

1. what other materials did they use _____

2. We re excited to learn _____

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

الجيزة - منشأة القناطر (2023)

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Ancient Egyptian artifacts

Guiding fact file

objects	Pyramids and artifacts
material	granite, gold

_____

_____

_____

Lesson 2 They loved animals

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



falcon صقر



crocodile تمساح



baboon قرد البابون



monkey قرد



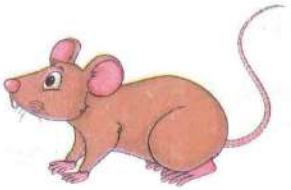
ibis طائر أبو منجل



hippo فرس النهر



mouse (mice) فأر (فئران)



rat(s) فأر كبير (فئران)



snake ثعبان

Other words كلمات أخرى

university	جامعة
safe	آمن
especially	خاصة
afterlife	الحياة الآخرة
tombs	مقابر
thousands	آلاف
decision	قرار
whole time	طوال الوقت
hiking	التجول على الأقدام

particularly	خاصة
almost	تقريبًا
knowledge	معرفة
everyday life	الحياة اليومية
therefore	إذاً
pests	آفات
pet	حيوان أليف
trick	خدعة

Adjectives صفات

free	خالى من / حُر
dangerous	خطير
difficult	صعب
popular / common	شائع / منتشر
important	مهم
easy	سهل

Definitions تعريفات

grain حبوب/ غلة	seeds from plants used to make flour and bread
adored عشق	loved something very much
wisdom حكمة	using your knowledge to make good decisions
mummify يحنط	to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time
statue تمثال	an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ أفعال منتظمة
adore يعشق	adored
mummify يحنط	mummified
love يحب	loved
believe يعتقد	believed
look after يعتنى بـ	looked after
represent يمثل / يرُمز	represented
include يشمل	included
produce ينتج	produced

Irregular

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ أفعال غير منتظمة
keep يُربى	kept
find يجد	found
am / is يكون	was
are يكونوا	were
eat يأكل	ate
feed يطعم	fed
become يصبح	became
teach يعلم	taught
grow up يكبر	grew up

Study the following

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets.

- أحب المصريون القدماء الحيوانات وقاموا بتربية الكثير منهم كحيوانات أليفة.

2. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house.

- عشق المصريون القدماء القطط. حيث كان هناك تقريبًا قطة فى كل منزل.

3. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe.

- اعتقد المصريون القدماء بأن القطط تعتنى بهم وتحافظ عليهم فى أمان.

4. Cats were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes.

- كانت القطط حيوانات اليفة جيدة لأنها تنظف نفسها وتحافظ على البيوت خالية من الآفات مثل الفئران والثعابين.

5. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grains.

- كان ذلك مهم جدًا خاصةً للفلاحين الذين يزرعون الحبوب..

6. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats.

- لم تأكل الفئران الحبوب لأن القطط تأكل الفئران.

7. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos and lions which were dangerous and difficult to look after.

- ربى بعض الناس الحيونات التى من الصعب رعايتها مثل التماسيح، وحيوانات فرس النهر والأسود.

8. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom.

- أحب المصريون القدماء الطيور خاصة الصقر وطائر أبو منجل حيث كان رمزًا للحكمة.

9. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone.

- يوجد الآلاف من المومياوات الخاصة بطائر أبو منجل فى سقارة فقط.

10. They were also important in the afterlife.

- كان مهمين أيضًا للحياة الآخرة (الحياة بعد الموت).

11. Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt.

- مازالت القطط منتشرة كحيوان آليف فى مصر.

Language focus — قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage الاستخدام

◉ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- They loved animals.

2 Form التكوين

Subject (فاعل) + verb (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- I grew up in Cairo.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولا: الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed, ied:

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه d فقط:

- love → love(d) dance → dance(d)

- إذا لم ينتهى الفعل بحرف e نضيف اليه ed:

- need → need(ed) look → look(ed)

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف y يسبقه حرف ساكن نقوم بحذف حرف الـ y ونضيف ied:

- study → stud(ied) try → tr(ied)

- بعض الافعال نضاعف بها الحرف الاخير عند اضافة ed:

- drop → drop(ped) stop → stop(ped)

ثانيا: الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي:

- keep → kept become → became

3 Negative النفي

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

Subject + never + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة

- Mice didn't eat grains.
- I never loved math when I was young.

4 Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + Did + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة?

- Did you visit the Pyramids?

◉ وتكون الإجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي:

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.

- When did you travel to London? - I traveled two years ago.

yesterday	last (week / month / year)	ago
in the past	in + year (in 2010)	

5 Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

Verb to be in the past فعل يكون فى الماضى

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was
We/ You / They / اسم جمع	were

- It was hot yesterday.
- Keeping crocodiles were dangerous in Ancient Egypt..

◉ لا نستخدم did أو didn't في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون verb to be في زمن الماضي البسيط ولكن نضع (not) بعد (was / were):

- Shady and Martin didn't be at school yesterday. (x)
- Shady and Martin weren't at school yesterday. (√)
- Did Adam be with his father? (x)
- Was Adam with his father? (√)

Practice

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I _____ (grow up) in a village in the past.
2. Amr _____ (didn't) happy yesterday.
3. _____ (Do) you play football last week?
4. Ancient Egyptians _____ (look after) their pets.
5. Which _____ (did) their favorite animals?
6. They _____ (clean) the room yesterday.
7. _____ (Was) there pens on the chair?
8. They _____ (didn't) happy last week.

Help your child to know about the past simple. ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن الماضي البسيط.

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:

1

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly[1] adored[2] cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed[3] that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests[4] like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain[5]. The mice[6] didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

2

As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons[7]. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

3

Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom[8]. There are thousands of mummified[9] ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and statues[10] of animals in the tombs.

4

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

Arabic Meaning

١- خاصة
٢- عشقوا
٣- اعتقدوا
٤- آفات
٥- حبوب/غلة
٦- فئران
٧- قرود البابون
٨- حكمة
٩- محنط
١٠- تماثيل

1 Complete the sentences with the past simple form:

اكمل الجمل بصيغة الماضي البسيط:

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved (love) their pets.
2. They _____ (teach) their monkeys different tricks.
3. The crocodiles quickly _____ (become) dangerous pets.
4. The ibis _____ (represent) wisdom.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. _____ is seeds from plants to make flour. الغربية - بسيون (2024)

a Trash b Grain c Climate d Wisdom

2. A _____ is an object made of stone to look like a person or an animal. المنيا - العدوة (2023)

a stone b statue c bird d material

3. Ancient Egyptians loved _____ especially falcons and ibises. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2023)

a lions b birds c metals d plants

4. Omar _____ cats. He loves them very much. الغربية - شرق طنطا (2023)

a preserves b kills c hates d adores

5. Falcons and ibises represented _____ in Ancient Egypt. بني سويف - سمسطا (2024)

a bread b wisdom c statue d trick

6. To " _____ " is to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a long time. سوهاج - طهطا (2023)

a wear b grow c skip d mummify

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: قنا - فرشوط (2023)

statue - pets - zoo - bananas

Monkeys are funny animals. They are my favorite animals. Many people kept monkeys as ① _____. They are popular in Egypt. I saw monkeys at the ② _____. They eat nuts and ③ _____. People put monkeys in cages as pets.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I had a picnic in the park. I went to Al-Azhar Park with my friends. The park was very nice. We played football there. I fell over and hurt my leg. My friends took me to the doctor. The doctor advised me not to play football for a month. **He** gave me some medicine. I took the medicine and felt better.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to the park _____.

a last week b yesterday c last month d last year

2. The underlined pronoun "**He**" refers to the _____.

a friend b doctor c park d football

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did the doctor give you? _____

4. What did you hurt? _____

5. What did they play in the park? _____

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Where _____ **(do)** they go last week? البحر الأحمر - سفاجا (2023)

2. They _____ **(weren't)** go to the park last week.

3. They _____ **(was)** important in the afterlife. سوهاج - البلينا (2024)

4. Amr _____ **(goes)** to the market last week.

5. Hani didn't _____ **(went)** to school.

6. _____ **(Was)** there a lot of birds?

5 Write an email of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Hossam about Ancient Egyptian pets, your name is Hesham and your email address is hesham@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hossam@yahoo.com

مجاب اخر الوحدة

cats - important for farmers

New Message		
To	.....	Cc Bcc
From	.....	
Subject	.....	

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lesson 3 Part 1 ★ Metal in Ancient Egypt

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

stone	حجر
glass	زجاج
metal	معدن
gold	ذهب
silver	فضة

weapon	سلاح
economy	اقتصاد
tools	عدد / أدوات
iron	حديد

Other words كلمات أخرى

Tutankamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون
lines	خطوط
chin	ذقن
goods	بضاعة
buying	الشراء
selling	البيع
jewelry	مجوهرات
beard	لحية
culture	ثقافة

system	نظام
object	شيء / أداة
fighting	قتال
hunting	صيد
art	فن
shape	شكل
craftsmen	حرفيون
sculpture	تمثال منحوت

Adjectives صفات

harder	أكثر صلابة
different	مختلف
popular	شائع / محبوب

rarer	أكثر ندرة
common	شائع / منتشر
fascinating	مذهل

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

on	على
in	فى
in front of	أمام
between	بين

under	تحت
next to	بجوار
behind	خلف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
trade	يتاجر	traded
use	يستخدم	used
hunt	يصيد	hunted
melt	يذوب/ ينصهر	melted
form	يُشكل	formed
develop	يتطور	developed

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
find	يجد	found
sell	يبيع	sold
buy	يشترى	bought
make	يصنع	made
grow	يزرع	grew

Definitions تعريفات

trade	التجارة	buying and selling things between countries.
metal	معدن	something like gold or iron that is hard and strong.
weapon	سلاح	an object used for fighting or hunting animals
economy	اقتصاد	the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used

Study the following

1. **Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries.**

- تاجر المصريون القدماء مع الدول الأخرى.

2. **They first found metal in rocks.**

- وجد المصريون القدماء المعدن اولاً داخل الصخور.

3. **Metal was harder than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes.**

- كان المعدن اصلب من الصخور واستطاع المصريين القدماء صهر المعدن وتشكيله لأشكال مختلفة.

4. **They used metal to make tools and weapons.**

- استخدم المصريون القدماء المعدن لصناعة الأسلحة والعدد والأدوات.

5. **They could hunt and grow the land.**

- استطاع المصريون القدماء الصيد وزراعة الأرض.

6. **Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell.**

- كان الذهب معدنًا شائعًا لصنع المجوهرات والأعمال الفنية بغرض البيع.

7. **Silver was also used but was rarer.**

- كانت الفضة ايضًا مستخدمة ولكن كانت أكثر ندرة.

Language Functions

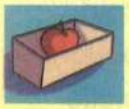
وظائف لغوية

◉ نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنحدد مكان الشئ.

- Where's the apple? أين التفاحة؟

Prepositions of place


It's **on** the box.


It's **in** the box.


It's **in front of** the box.


It's **between** the boxes.


It's **under** the box.


It's **next to** the box.


It's **behind** the box.

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Injy : Our class presentation[1] is about trade in Ancient Egypt. I'm Injy, and this is Dalia. The Ancient Egyptians bought from and sold many things to different[2] countries. This is called trading, Dalia, can you tell us what kinds of things the Ancient Egyptians traded?

Dalia : Thanks, Injy. Well, one of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around 7,000 years ago. They heated[3] the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.

Injy : That's fascinating[4], Dalia, thank you. What did they use the metal for?

Dalia : They used it to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow things like food more easily[5]. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations[6]. Silver was also used, but it was rare. As art and culture were very important to the Ancient Egyptians, many of their craftsmen used different types of metal to make statues and sculptures[7] to sell.

Arabic Meaning

١- عرض تقديمى
٢- مختلف
٣- سخن
٤- مبهر/خلاب
٥- بسهولة
٦- الديكورات
٧- منحوتات

Injy : That's right. But they didn't just sell metal to other countries. They also bought some metals like silver, which they got through trade with countries. And as they traded more, this helped the Ancient Egyptians develop(8) their economy, until Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest(9) economies in the world.

٨- يطور
٩- الأقوى
١٠- قطع أثرية
١١- حقيق
١٢- حسنًا

Dalia : Yes, you only need to look at the Ancient Egyptian artifacts(10) in museums today to see that this is true(11).

Injy : Well(12), that's the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions please?

1 Listen again and complete: استمع مرة أخرى وأكمل:

Tapescript نص الاستماع



shapes - rocks - on - develop - in

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal ❶ ..... rocks. Metal was harder than ❷ ....., and they could melt and form it into different ❸ ..... They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt ❹ ..... the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to ❺ .....

2 Complete the text using the prepositions in the box:

أكمل النص مستخدمًا حروف الجر بالإطار:

between - in - on - under

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found ❶ ..... his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines ❷ ..... gold lines. ❸ ..... his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake ❹ ..... the top of his head.



Lesson 3 Part 2

★ King Midas and the Golden touch
★ Pronunciation



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

reward	مكافأة
rose	وردة
daughter	ابنة
human	إنسان

trip over	يتعثر
hug	يعانق
tears	دموع
castle	قلعة



Other words كلمات أخرى

ground	أرضية
wish	أمنية
chair	كرسى
again	مرة أخرى
minute	دقيقة
trip over	يتعثر
meal	وجبة

true	حقيقة
night	ليلة
world	عالم
around	حول
outside	بالخارج
before	قبل
goat	معزة
garden	حديقة

Adjectives صفات

special	خاص / مميز
precious	ثمين
strange-looking	غريب المظهر

sick	مريض
kind	عطوف
warm	دافئ
golden	ذهبى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
live يعيش	lived
trip over يتعثر فى	tripped over
celebrate يحتفل	celebrated
call يدعى / يسمى	called
turn into يتحول إلى	turned into
care يعتنى	cared
save ينقذ	saved
return يعود	returned
hug يعانق	hugged
touch يلمس	touched

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
take يأخذ	took
give يعطى	gave
feel يشعر	felt
leave يغادر	left
fall يقع / يسقط	fell
lose يفقد / يخسر	lost
spend يقضى	spent
come true يصبح حقيقة	came true

Study the following

1. Many years ago, there lived a king called king Midas.
- منذ سنوات عديدة، عاش هناك ملك يدعى الملك ميداس.
2. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold.
- كان يحب ثلاثة أشياء اكثر من أى شئ وهم ابنته مارى جولد وحديقة الورود والذهب.
3. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold.
- كان الشئ المفضل لديه هو قضاء بعض الوقت فى حديقته مع ابنته مارى جولد.
4. He also liked to look at all the gold in the castle.
- أحب (الملك) أيضًا أن ينظر إلى كل الذهب فى قلعته.
5. One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground.
- فى احد الليالى، كان يمشى الملك فى حديقته عندما تعثر فى شئ ما على الأرض.
6. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick
- كانت عنزة غريبة المظهر. كانت مريضة جدًا.
7. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle.
- كان الملك ميداس رجلاً عطوفا، لذلك أخذ العنزة إلى قلعته.
8. He gave it food and warm bed.
- أعطى الملك العنزة طعامًا وسريرًا دافئًا.
9. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"
- ما هو اكثر شئ فى العالم تريده؟

10 "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold".

- "أود أن يتحول كل ما ألمسه إلى ذهب".

11 The goat made the king's wish come true.

- حققت العنزة رغبة الملك.

12 When he touched a chair, it turned into gold.

- عندما لمس الملك كرسيًا تحول الكرسى إلى ذهب.

13 When he touched his bed, it turned into gold.

- عندما لمس سريره، تحول السرير إلى ذهب.

14 His tears fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold.

- سقطت دموع الملك على ورده الثمينة وتحولت إلى ذهب.

15 Your family is more important than money and material things.

- عائلتك أهم من المال والأشياء المادية.

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

KING MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH



Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle.

- منذ سنوات عديدة، عاش حينها ملك يدعى الملك ميداس. كان يحب ثلاثة أشياء اكثر من أى شئ آخر: ابنته مارى جولد وحديقة الورود والذهب. كان الشئ المفضل لديه هو قضاء بعض الوقت فى حديقته مع مارى جولد. لكنه كان يحب أيضًا النظر إلى كل الذهب فى قلعته.

One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

- فى إحدى الليالى، كان يمشى فى حديقته عندما تعثر فى شئ ما على الأرض. كانت عنزة غريبة المظهر. كانت مريضة جدًا وكان الملك ميداس رجلًا لطيفًا. لذلك أخذ العنزة إلى قلعته وأعطاها طعامًا وسريرًا دافئًا وفى الصباح شعرت العنزة بتحسن كبير.

"I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

- قالت العنزة "أود أن اشكرك يا ملك ميداس. "ماذا تريد أكثر من أى شئ آخر فى العالم؟"

King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

- فكر الملك ميداس لدقيقة ثم قال "أود أن يتحول كل ما المسه إلى ذهب".

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

- قالت العنزة حسنًا. ثم تحولت امنية الملك إلى حقيقة.

King Midas was very excited. After the goat left, he walked around the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to gold. When he touched his bed, it turned to gold, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special meal. But when he touched the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outside into the garden to find Marigold. When he hugged her, she also turned to gold!

- كان الملك متحمسًا جدًا وبعد مغادرة العنزة بدأ فى التجول فى القلعة. عندما لمس كرسيًا تحول إلى ذهب. عندما لمس سريره تحول إلى ذهب أيضًا. وللاحتفال طلب وجبة خاصة ولكن عندما لمس الطعام لم يستطيع تناوله لأنه تحول إلى ذهب. بعد ذلك خرج إلى الحديقة للعثور على مارى جولد. عندما عانقها تحولت أيضًا إلى ذهب.

King Midas started crying. "Please come back, goat!" he said. "I can't lose Marigold." His tears fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold. But he didn't care about roses or gold any more – he just wanted to save his daughter.

- بدأ الملك ميداس فى البكاء. من فضلك ارجعى أيتها العنزة. قال لا يمكننى أن افقد مارى جولد. سقطت دموعه على وروده الثمينة وتحولت إلى ذهب. لكنه لم يعد يهتم بالورود أو الذهب، أراد فقط إنقاذ ابنته.

The goat heard King Midas and returned to change everything back to how it was before.

- سمعت العنزة الملك ميداس وعادت لتغير كل شئ إلى ما كان عليه من قبل.

"Thank you so much!" said King Midas. "I will never think gold is so important again!"

- شكرًا جزيلًا لك! لن اعتقد أبدًا أن الذهب مهم جدًا!

Read again and choose the moral a, b, or c:

اقرأ مرة اخرى ثم اختر الدرس الاخلاقى فى القصة:

a. It's good to have a lot of gold and be rich. ☐

b. You will always get a reward if you are unkind. ☐

c. Your family is more important than money and material things ☐

Pronunciation

ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الرمز الصوتى /re/ كما بالكلمات الاتية.

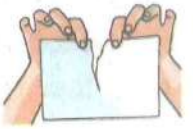
sound /er/


bear دب


hair شعر


there هناك


air هواء


tear يمزق


pair زوج


share يتشارك


pear كمُثرى


wear يرتدى

rare نادر

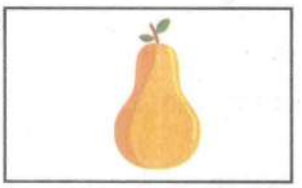
1 **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with the words in the box. Then listen, check, and repeat:**

انظر إلى الصور واكمل الجمل بالكلمات الموجودة بالمربع:

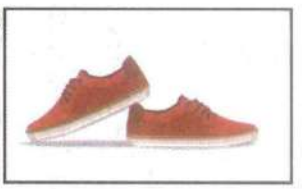
air - pair - pear - rare - tear - wear

1 

That gemstone is very rare it's not easy to find.

2 

This _____ looks delicious.

3 

There's a _____ of brown shoes.

4 

I like walking in the fresh _____.

5 

Don't pull that – you'll _____ it!

6 

What do you want to _____ today?



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A/An _____ is the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used. القاهرة - الزيتون (2023)

a metal b weapon c economy d tool

2. Gold is a popular metal for making _____. الغربية - بسيون (2024)

a clothes b jewelry c glasses d food

3. The boy started crying. His _____ fell on his face. المنوفية - أشمون (2023)

a tooth b tears c arms d legs

4. Ancient Egyptians used metal to make _____ to hunt. القاهرة - الزاوية (2023)

a economy b weapons c trade d glass

5. The king was walking in his garden when he _____ over something on the ground. بني سويف - بني سويف (2023)

a tripped b trapped c hugged d tore

6. The princess is the king's _____ الإسكندرية - العجمي (2024)

a friend b daughter c son d brother

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: أسيوط - ساحل سليم (2023)

mask - gold - weapons - trade

Ancient Egyptians used metal in different things. They used metal to make ① _____ to hunt and grow land. They could melt it and form it into different shapes. Ancient Egyptians used ② _____ to make jewelry. Gold was a popular metal. They used gold to make Tutankhamun's ③ _____.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

دمياط - كفر سعد (2023)

Metals had a great role in Ancient Egypt. The Ancient Egyptians had a lot of metals including gold, silver and iron. Ancient Egyptians made the jewelry from gold. It was valuable and precious. They also used silver. Silver was less common in Ancient Egypt. Iron was used to make tools and weapons.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ancient Egyptians made the jewelry from _____.

a iron b gold c stone d paper

2. Gold was _____ and precious.

a valuable b bad c small d far

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What was iron used for?

4. Mention two metals from the passage.

5. Summarize the passage in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. could - They - hunt - and - land - grow - the. المنوفية - تلا (2023)

2. tools - used - They - metal - weapons - to - make - and. الإسكندرية (2023)

3. than money - more - Your family - important - is. الغربية - السنطة (2024)

4. Midas - kind - a very - King - was - man. قنا - فرشوط (2023)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The apples are in front _____ (on) the box. المنوفية - قويسنا (2023)

2. It's next _____ (of) the book. بني سويف - بني سويف (2023)

3. She _____ (be) at school last week. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)

4. He didn't _____ (fell) on the ground. الغربية - كفر الزيات (2024)

5. Silver _____ (were) also used but was rarer. كفر الشيخ - الحامول (2023)

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the mask is gold

2. where is the eraser

Lessons 4&5

★ Writing and project

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

copper	نحاس
bronze	برونز
iron	حديد
meteorite	نيزك
silver	فضة
Scarab Amulet	الجعران الفرعونى

dagger	خنجر
mine	يستخرج/ منجم
precious	ثمين
fire	لهب / نار
heaven	السماء

Other words كلمات أخرى

mirror	مرآة
sheet silver	ورق الفضة
salt	ملح
amazingly	من المثير للدهشة
later	فيما بعد
result	نتيجة

fortune	حظ
craftsmen	حرفيين (اصحاب حرفة)
possible	ممكن
item	أشياء / سلع
agricultural	زراعى
image	صورة

Questions words كلمات استفهام

When.....?	متى؟
Where.....?	أين؟

What.....?	ما / ماذا؟
Why.....?	لماذا؟

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
start يبدأ	started
mine ينقب / يستخرج	mined

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
make يصنع	made
come يأتى	came

protect	يحمى	protected	
appear	يظهر	appeared	
divide	يقسم	divided	
decorate	يُزين	decorated	
begin	يبدأ		began
bring	يُحضر		brought



Study the following

1. **The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago.**

- بدأ المصريون القدماء فى استخدام الحديد منذ اكثر من خمسة آلاف عامًا.

2. **Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites.**

- من المثير للدهشة. بعض الحديد المستخدم منذ القدم كان من النيازك.

3. **Ancient Egyptians craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite.**

- صنع المصريون القدماء خنجرًا مشهور لمقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون من نيزك.

4. **They also mined iron from the ground.**

- قام المصريون القدماء بالتنقيب عن الحديد من الأرض.

5. **They found it difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt.**

- وجد المصريون القدماء صعوبة فى استخدام الحديد لأنه يحتاج إلى حرارة عالية للأنصهار.

6. **They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky.**

- اعتقد المصريون القدماء بأن الحديد كان معدنًا مميزًا لأنهم اعتقدوا أنه يأتى من السماء.

7. **They called it "the metal of heaven".**

- قام المصريون القدماء بتسمية الحديد "معدن السماء".

8. **Iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.**

- كان الحديد اكثر قيمة من الذهب لأنه كان وجوده اكثر ندره من الذهب.

9. **The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry.**

- استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد فى صنع الأشياء الصغيرة مثل المجوهرات.

10. **Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find.**

- كان استخدام المعادن مثل النحاس والبرونز اكثر شيوعًا فى صناعة العدد والأدوات لان الحصول عليهم كان اسهل.

11. **Iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear.**

- بدأت الأدوات الزراعية والأسلحة المصنوعة من الحديد فى الظهور.



How to write a fact file
كيف تكتب ملف حقائق

◉ **ندرس فى هذا الدرس كيفية كتابة (ملف حقائق) عن موضوع ما ويكون كالآتى:**

1. Questions:

١- الأسئلة عن الموضوع:

- مثلاً عن ورق البردى

1- What is the papyrus?

2- Where can you find papyrus?

3- Why do we need papyrus?

4- When did they start using papyrus?

٢- البحث عن الحقائق الخاصة بالموضوع بالإجابة على هذه الأسئلة.

◉ **وفيما يلى نموذج لملف حقائق عن ورق البردى:**

Papyrus in Ancient Egypt



What is the papyrus?	It's a special plant for making paper. Ancient Egyptians used it.
Where can you find papyrus?	You can find papyrus near the River Nile, it needs a lot of water to grow.
Why did Ancient Egyptians need papyrus?	Ancient Egyptians needed papyrus to make paper to write on it.
When did they start using papyrus?	They used papyrus in Ancient Egypt.

1 Read the fact file. Why did Ancient Egyptians call iron "the metal of heaven"?:

اقرأ ملف الحقائق. لماذا قام المصريون القدماء بتسمية الحديد (معدن السماء):

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Iron in Ancient Egypt

When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before(1) iron, they worked with copper and bronze.



Where did they find iron?

Amazingly(2), some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt(3), which often wasn't possible(4).





Why did they think iron was special?

They thought iron was special(5) because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven" (6). For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

What did they use iron for?

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common (7) metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later(8) on, iron agricultural(9) tools and weapons began to appear(10). This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

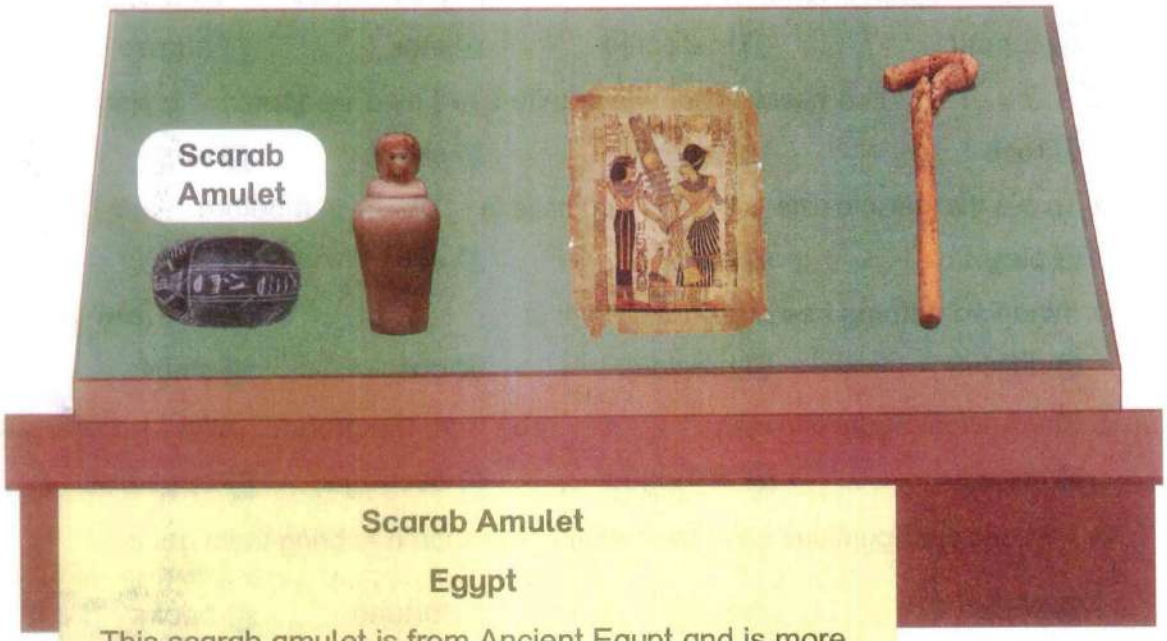
Arabic Meaning

١- قبل
٢- من المدهش
٣- يذوب
٤- ممكن
٥- مميز
٦- السماء
٧- شائع
٨- لاحقا
٩- زراعي
١٠- يظهر

2 Work in groups of three. Think and research:

اعملوا فى مجموعات من ثلاثة طلاب. فكر وابحث:

Look at the artifacts in the museum gallery. Then, read the display board for the scarab amulet.



Scarab Amulet

Egypt

This scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

تميمة الجعران تعود لمصر القديمة وعمرها أكثر من ٣٠٠٠ عام. مصنوعة من النحاس. ارتدى الناس مجوهرات عليها صورة التميمة لتحميهم وتجلب لهم الحظ الجيد.

استمع إلى النص:



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A _____ is a rock that came from the sky. المنوفية - الشهداء (2023)

a copper b meteorite c star d bronze

2. A _____ is a special tool like a knife used as a weapon. المنيا - ملوي (2023)

a rock b dagger c sheet d tomb

3. To use the iron into different things, you need to _____ it before. القاهرة - الزاوية (2023)

a play b melt c eat d see

4. When something has a great value, it is _____. أسوان - إدفو (2024)

a difficult b precious c easy d small

5. The Ancient Egyptians also _____ iron from the ground. القاهرة - الزاوية الحمراء (2024)

a mined b damaged c destroyed d appeared

6. The Ancient Egyptians used the image of the scarab to bring them good _____. المنوفية - قويسنا (2023)

a paper b food c fortune d books

2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Iron had a great role in Ancient Egypt. It wasn't used as the materials like copper and bronze. Ancient Egyptians considered iron the most valuable and precious metal.It was first used to decorate things like jewelry and small objects. Iron was rare in Ancient Egypt.

Ancient Egyptians first used iron from meteorites. It was the main source of iron. After that, Ancient Egyptians mined the iron from the ground. They made tools and weapons from iron.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ had a great role in Ancient Egypt.

a Paper b Iron c Stone d Tools

2. Ancient Egyptians considered iron the most _____ metal.

a bad b happy c precious d sad

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did Ancient Egyptians used iron for?_____

4. What was the main source of iron in Ancient Egypt?

5. Summarize the second paragraph into a sentence.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

القليوبية - طوخ (2023)

1. also - They - mined - the ground - iron - from.

2. needs - It - a very hot - fire - melt - to.

الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)

3. bronze - Copper - and - common - were - metals.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. where did they find iron

2. they mined iron from the ground

5 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

Iron in Ancient Egypt

Guiding questions

1- Where did Ancient Egyptians find it?

2- What did Ancient Egyptians use iron for?

Review

Key vocabulary


clay صلصال


glass زجاج


gold ذهب


granite حجر جرانيت


paper ورق


papyrus ورق البردى


baboon قرد البابون


crocodile تمساح

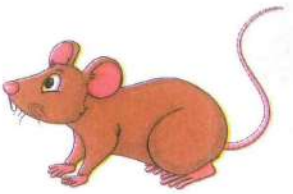

falcon صقر


hippo فرس النهر


ibis طائر أبو منجل


monkey قرد


snake ثعبان


rat(s) فأر كبير (فئران)


mouse (mice) فأر (فئران)

artifacts	قطع اثرية
stone	حجر
metal	معدن
silver	فضة
durable	صلب / قوى التحمل

fascinating	مبهر / خلاب
weapon	سلاح
economy	اقتصاد
tools	عدد / أدوات
iron	حديد

Adjectives صفات

free	خالى من / حُر
dangerous	خطير
difficult	صعب
harder	اكثر صلابة
different	مختلف

interesting	مثير للاهتمام
popular / common	شائع / منتشر
important	مهم
rarer	اكثر ندرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
damage يتلف/ يدمر	damaged
preserve يحفظ/ يصون	preserved
adore يعشق	adored
mummify يحنط	mummified
trade يتاجر	traded
hunt يصيد	hunted
melt يذوب/ ينصهر	melted
form يشكل	formed
trip over يتعثر فى	tripped over
hug يعانق	hugged
mine ينقب / يستخرج	mined

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
know يعرف	knew
hear يسمع	heard
find يجد	found
become يصبح	became
teach يعلم	taught
grow up يكبر	grew up
sell يبيع	sold
grow يزرع	grew
feel يشعر	felt
leave يغادر	left
fall يقع / يسقط	fell
lose يفقد / يخسر	lost

Grammar قواعد لغوية

The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

1 Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- They loved animals.

2 Form التكوين

Subject (فاعل) + verb (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- I grew up in Cairo.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولا: الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed ,ied:

- love → love(d) dance → dance(d)
- need → needed study → studied - stop → stopped

ثانيا: الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي:

- keep → kept become → became

3 Negative النفي

Subject فاعل + didn't + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة

Subject + never + التصريف الثاني للفعل + باقي الجملة

- Mice didn't eat grains.

4 Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + Did + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة?

- Did you visit the Pyramids?

◉ وتكون الإجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي:

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.

5 Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	last (week / month / year)	ago
in the past	in + year (in 2010)	

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

◉ **Verb to be in the past** فعل يكون فى الماضى

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was
We/ You / They / اسم جمع	were

- It was hot yesterday.
- Keeping crocodiles were dangerous in Ancient Egypt.

◉ لا نستخدم did أو didn't في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون verb to be في زمن الماضي البسيط ولكن نضع (not) بعد (was / were):

- Adam wasn't at school yesterday. - They were happy last week.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 1

Ancient Egyptian artifacts

1 Ancient Egyptians had a lot of artifacts. They also used gold to make a lot of things in Tutankhamun's tomb. They liked to use gold because it was valuable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition. Ancient Egyptians used materials that could last forever. They used granite to build the Pyramids.

Lesson 2

2

New Message

To	hossam@yahoo.com	Cc Bcc
From	hesham@gmail.com	
Subject	Ancient Egyptian pets	

Dear Hossam,
How are you? I want to tell you about Ancient Egyptian pets. Ancient Egyptians loved pets. They adored cats. They believed that cats were important for farmers. Cats ate mice. They kept houses free of mice. The houses were free of pests like snakes and rats. Ancient Egyptians loved birds, too.
Yours
Hesham

Lessons 4&5

Iron in Ancient Egypt

3 The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they thought first that iron came from the sky. They called it the "metal of heaven". Iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer. They thought iron was special because it came from meteorites.

Al-Azhar Test

Metals in Ancient Egypt

4 There were a lot of metals in Ancient Egypt. They were copper, silver, iron and gold. They used metals in different things. They used iron to make weapons and tools. They mined metals from the ground.

Test Unit 7

Tutankhamun's Mask

5 Tutankhamun's Mask is an Egyptian artifact. It's one of the most beautiful artifacts in Ancient Egypt. The mask is made of gold with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head. Ancient Egyptians used gold to make artifacts because it is valuable, but it is also very durable.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

iron - tools - did - used - popular

Amr : Good morning, Mr Tarek.

Mr Tarek : Good morning, Amr.

Amr : What ❶ _____ the Ancient Egyptians trade first?

Mr Tarek : They traded ❷ _____.

Amr : What did they use it for?

Mr Tarek : They used it to make ❸ _____.

Amr : What was the ❹ _____ metal for making jewelry?

Mr Tarek : They ❺ _____ gold.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	when	tomb	where	what	_____
2	in	on	box	next to	_____
3	hugged	played	eat	loved	_____
4	sick	popular	precious	goat	_____
5	gold	silver	copper	beautiful	_____

3 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____ is an object made of stone to look like a person or an animal.

a statue b pet c metal d rate

2. The gemstone is very _____, it's not easy to find.

a bad b rare c cheap d sick

3. Ancient Egyptians _____ iron from the ground.

a ate b mined c played d fell

4. Ancient Egyptians used _____ to hunt animals.

a clay b weapons c gold d paper

5. One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's _____.

a mask b meteorite c pen d goat

6. The book is in front _____ the desk.

a on b to c of d at

7. _____ you have a nice weekend?

a Were b Did c Is d Does

8. He _____ to the ground last week.

a fall b falls c fell d felt

9. Ancient Egyptians first found metal _____ the ground.

a of b in c next d between

10. A: _____ is the pen? B: It's on the desk.

a What b Where c Who d Why

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Papyrus was an ancient writing material in Ancient Egypt. This material was used in Ancient Egypt. Papyrus grew along the River Nile. Papyrus needed a lot of water to grow. Papyrus was a valuable material. Paper was made from the papyrus plant. Papyrus grew in dry climates. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to make baskets and sandals, too.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What was papyrus? _____

2. Where did papyrus grow? _____

3. What did papyrus need to grow? _____

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. Paper was made from the papyrus _____.

a flower b plant c root d seed

5. Papyrus grew in a _____ climate.

a wet b dry c bad d sad

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. would - **What** - like - you - know - to? المنوفية - الشهداء (2023)

2. are - **Cats** - still - popular - in - Egypt - pets. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2023)

3. fell over - **I** - hurt - and - arm - my.

4. did - they - iron - using - **When** - start?

5. **Bronze** - copper - and - common - were - metals. الأقصر - الأقصر (2023)

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Metals in Ancient Egypt

copper - silver - iron - gold - mined

Test on Unit 7



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Shehab went to the Pyramids _____.
   a yesterday b last week c today d last month
2. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with _____.
   a granite b clay c paper d mud
3. Shehab visited the Khufu _____ ship.
   a solar b bird c sand d clay
4. Shehab saw the _____ near the Pyramids.
   a bus b Sphinx c horse d car

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There were _____ pets and statues of animals in the tombs. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)
   a mummified b busy c dangerous d noisy
2. Ancient Egyptians used gold in jewelry because it was _____.
   a bad b precious c easy d sad
3. The farmer needs a cat to eat the _____ to save the grain. الغربية - سمنود (2023)
   a fish b rats c baboons d lions

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: القاهرة - الزاوية الحمراء (2023)

artifacts - cheap - conditions - valuable

The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also use clay which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots. They also liked to use gold because it is (1) _____, but it is also very durable. When they cover (2) _____ in gold, they kept them in good (3) _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Hazem. I visited the Museum of Ancient History last month. I went with my friends. We went by bus on a school trip. The museum was great. There were many artifacts. Egypt has many artifacts from the past. We saw Tutankhamun's mask. It was very beautiful. It is made of gold. There is a snake on the top of his head.We learnt about history. It was a great visit.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hazem visited the museum _____.

a last month b yesterday c last week d last year

2. They went to the museum by _____.

a car b bus c bike d train

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage. _____

4. What is Tutankhamun's mask made of? _____

5. What is on the top of the mask? _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. they - the afternoon - **What** - in - did - do? _____ الغربية - شرق طنطا (2023)

2. Egyptians - **The Ancient** - iron - used - small - for - items. _____ المنوفية - شبين الكوم (2023)

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Why _____ **(were)** iron difficult to work with? الإسكندرية - العامرية (2023)

2. I didn't _____ **(watched)** TV yesterday. المنوفية - تلا (2024)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. No we didn't _____

2. is it made of copper _____

8 Write a paragraph of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Tutankhamun's mask

Guiding phrases

beautiful artifacts - gold

_____

_____

_____

Theme 3

Unit 8

I discover myself

Toys and games

اللعب والألعاب



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويناقش ويكتب عن الألعاب واللعب والأنشطة.

2. Listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ حوار عن الألعاب واللعب القديمة.

3. Use verb intensifiers.

- يستخدم الطالب المعززات اللفظية للفعل.

4. Listen to and understand a story about a toy.

- يستمع الطالب إلى قصة عن لعبة ويفهمها.

5. Use verbs that are followed by -ing.

- يستخدم الطالب الأفعال التي يتبعها ing.

6. Spell and say words containing gh or ght.

- يتهجى الطالب وينطق الكلمات التي تحتوي على gh أو ght.

7. Use pie charts and bar graphs.

- يستخدم الطالب الرسوم البيانية الدائرية والرسوم البيانية الشريطية.

8. Write a description of your favorite game.

- يكتب الطالب وصفًا للعبته المفضلة.

9. Design and make a simple board game.

- يصمم الطالب ويصنع لعبة لوحية بسيطة.

Lesson 1 ★ A BOX OF TOYS

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



doll's house
بيت الدمية



cuddly toy
دمية العناق



board game
لعبة لوحية



action figure
مجسم شخصية كرتونية



train set
نموذج القطار اللعبة



skateboard
لوح تزلج



rollerblades
حذاء بعجلات



marbles
بلي

have a go	يجرب

beat	يهزم
make up	يؤلف / يخترع

Other words كلمات أخرى

old toys	اللعب القديمة
brilliant	رائع
later	لاحقًا / فيما بعد
cool	رائع

actually	في الحقيقة / بالفعل
younger	أصغر سنا
though	رغم ذلك
both	كلا / كلتا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ
invent	يخترع	invented		beat	يهزم	beat	
play	يلعب	played		have a go	يجرب	had a go	
visit	يزور	visited		make up	يخترع	made up	
want	يريد	wanted		think	يفكر	thought	



Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	So did I	وأنا كذلك
lots of	كثير من	look for	يبحث عن
after a while	بعد حين		



Definitions تعريفات

beat	يهزم	be more successful than someone in a game
have a go	يجرب	try something
made up	يخترع	thought of or invented



Study the following

1. Did you visit your grandma on the weekend? – هل زرت جدتك في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟
2. I found a box of my old toys. – لقد وجدت صندوق لعبي القديمة.
3. What did you find in there? – ماذا وجدت بداخله؟
4. There was an action figure. – كان هناك مجسم شخصية كرتونية.
5. I made up lots of games for them. – لقد صنعت الكثير من الألعاب لهم.
6. When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set.
   – عندما كنت أصغر سناً، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي نموذج القطار اللعبة.
7. My sister had a big doll's house. – كان لدى أختي بيت دمى كبير.

8 **Did you have a go on them?**

- هل قمت بتجربتهم؟

9 **I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard.**

- لم يكن لدي حذاء تزلج، لكن كان لدي لوح تزلج.

10 **I could go really fast after a while!**

- تمكنت من الانطلاق بسرعة كبيرة بعد فترة!

11 **Did you play board games when you were younger?**

- هل كنت تلعب الألعاب اللوحية عندما كنت أصغر سناً؟

12 **I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!**

- لقد لعبت مع أخي الأكبر، لكنه عادة ما كان يهزمني!

13 **We didn't play board games very often.**

- لم نلعب الألعاب اللوحية كثيرًا.

14 **I think I'll look for some of my old toys later.**

- أعتقد أنني سأبحث عن بعض لُعبي القديمة لاحقًا.

15 **I'd love to see my favorite cuddly toy again.**

- أحب أن أرى دمية العناق المفضلة لدي مرة أخرى.

1 Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:

Fares : Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?

Yaseen : Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually(1).

Adam : What did you find in there?

Yaseen : There was an action figure(2). I loved playing with it!

Fares : I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I made up(3) lots of games for them.

Adam : When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set(4).

Yaseen : I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big doll's house(5). We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old rollerblades(6), though.

Arabic Meaning

١- بالفعل
٢- نموذج متحرك
٣- يخترع
٤- نموذج قطار لعبة
٥- بيت الدمية
٦- حذاء بعجلات

Adam : Brilliant[7]! Did you have a go[8] on them?

Yaseen : No, I wanted to, but they were too small.

Fares : I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard[9]. I could go really fast after a while[10]!

Yaseen : Cool! Did you play board games[11] when you were younger?

Fares : Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat[12] me!

Adam : We didn't play board games very often, but we played marbles[13].

Fares : So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite cuddly toy[14] again.

Arabic Meaning

٧- رائع
٨- يجرب
٩- لوح تزلج
١٠- بعد حين
١١- ألعاب لوحية
١٢- يهزم
١٣- بلي
١٤- دمية العناق

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

اللعب مفيد لنا من عدة نواحي مختلفة. عندما نلعب، نشعر بالسعادة. كما نتعلم عن العالم وعن أنفسنا. عندما نلعب، نتعلم كيفية حل المشاكل وتكوين الصداقات.

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. To " _____ " is to be more successful than someone in a game.
الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)

a eat b beat c play d see

2. I like playing with a/an _____ figure. It's my favorite toy. قنا - قوص (2024)

a train b house c board d action

3. You can go fast on _____ .
الأقصر - إسنا (2023)

a rollerblades b marbles c board games d doll's houses

4. My little sister always takes her favorite _____ toy to bed.

a candy b cuddly c action d country

5. Spiderman was my favorite _____ .
الجيزة - الحوامدية (2023)

a subject b action figure c place d color

6. Nora has a big _____ house that she likes to play with it. الجيزة - البدرشين (2023)

a board b cuddly c train d doll's

7. My favorite game is a train _____ .
الدقهلية - ميت غمر (2024)

a sit b set c sat d pet

8. When you _____ something, you invent it.
سوهاج - طهطا (2023)

a think b beat c look for d make up

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: سوهاج - البلينا (2023)

make - figure - have - train

My brother and I still keep the boxes of our old toys. There are many toys in them. My favorite toy was an action ① _____ which I used to play with and ② _____ up games for it. My brother's favorite toy as a child was a ③ _____ set. He used to play with it all the time.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)

I'm Ibrahim. When I was young, I had many wonderful toys. I loved playing marbles with my brother Tamer. I had a skateboard. My favorite toy was my action figure. It looked like Spider Man. Tamer and I played board games very often, but Tamer usually beat me. My sister Sara loved playing with her doll's house. She had a cuddy toy that was soft and nice. We often played games together to enjoy our free time.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about _____.
   a music b artifacts c toys d food
2. Sara had a _____ that was soft and nice.
   a skateboard b train set c rollerblades d cuddy toy

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What's Ibrahim's favorite toy? _____
4. Why did they play games together? _____
5. What does Ibrahim love playing? _____

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. had - a big - My sister - house - doll's. (الغربية - كفر الزيات (2023)) _____
2. have - you - a go - Did - them - on? _____
3. could - after - I - fast - really - a while - go! _____
4. board - We - very - didn't - often - play - games. (الغربية - السنطة (2024)) _____
5. my - look - toys - for - I'll - old. (الدقهلية - شربين (2023)) _____

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what did you find in there _____
2. i found my old rollerblades _____

6 Write an email of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your brother Ahmed to tell him about your favorite toy. You name is Rana and your email address is rana@yahoo.com and your brother's email address is ahmed89@gmail.com

doll's house – train set

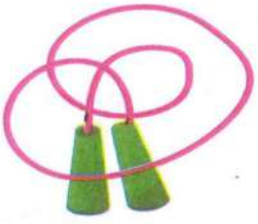
مجاب آخر الوحدة

New Message	
To	Cc Bcc
From	
Subject	

Lesson 2 ★ I WAS VERY GOOD AT HIDE AND SEEK

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



skipping
لعبة نط الحبل



hopscotch
لعبة الحجلة



hide and seek
لعبة الاستغماية

Other words كلمات أخرى

different	مختلف
difficult	صعب
helmet	خوذة
hiding	اختفاء
imagination	خيال
interesting	مثير للاهتمام

knee pads	واقي الركبة
outside	الخارج
project	مشروع
squares	مربعات
stickers	ملصقات
stories	قصص

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
climb	يتسلق	climbed
practice	يمارس	practiced
prefer	يفضل	preferred
start	يبدأ	started
use	يستخدم	used

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fall	يسقط	fell
seek	يبحث	sought
have	يملك	had
make up	يؤلف	made up
hide	يختفي	hid
wear	يرتدي	wore

Study the following

1. Have you started the project about toys and games yet?

- هل بدأت المشروع الخاص باللعب والألعاب حتى الآن؟

2. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

- ما هي الألعاب التي كنت تحب لعبها عندما كنت أصغر؟

3. I thought hide and seek was fun.

- اعتقدت أن الاستغماية كانت ممتعة.

4. I was very good at hiding!

- لقد كنت جيدًا جدًا في الاختباء!

5. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends.

- لقد أحببت جدًا لعب الحجلة مع أصدقائي.

6. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

- استخدمنا طباشيرًا بألوان مختلفة لرسم المربعات.

7. I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

- اعتقدت أن الحجلة كانت جيدة جدًا، لكنني فضلت نط الحبل.

8. I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it.

- أحببت نط الحبل، لكنني لم أكن جيدًا في ذلك.

9. Some skipping games are so difficult!

- بعض ألعاب القفز صعبة للغاية!

10. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

- كان علي أن أتدرب كثيرًا مع أختي!

11. We often played marbles together, though.

- رغم ذلك، كنا نلعب البلي معًا في كثير من الأحيان.

12. I really enjoyed riding my bike.

- لقد استمتعت حقا بركوب دراجتي.

13. I was very good at making up stories.

- لقد كنت جيدًا جدًا في تأليف القصص.

1 Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Sarah : Hi Rania, have you started the project(1) about toys and games yet?

Rania : Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's really interesting!

Sarah : Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

Rania : I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at hiding(2)!

Sarah : I was good at it, too! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different(3) colored chalk to draw the squares(4).

Rania : I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

Sarah : I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so difficult(5)!

Rania : Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

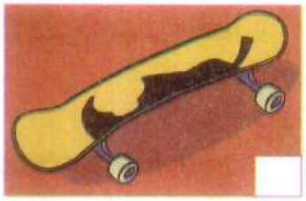
Sarah : Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.

Arabic Meaning
١- مشروع
٢- الاختباء
٣- مختلف
٤- مربعات
٥- صعب

2 Read the description and answer the questions:

اقرأ الوصف ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

1 

2 

3 

My Favorite Toy
by Youssef

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers(1) on it. I had to wear a helmet(2) and knee pads(3). It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

Arabic Meaning
١- ملصقات
٢- خوذة
٣- واقي الركبة

1. Where did Youssef play with his skateboard? _____
2. Who did he play with? _____
3. What did he have to wear? _____

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination(1). She was very good at making up stories(2). She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.
Nour really enjoyed playing outside(3) when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

Arabic Meaning
١- تخيل
٢- قصص
٣- بالخارج

1 What did Amina like? _____
2 What was Amina good at? _____
3 What did Nour like? _____
4 What was Nour good at? _____

Language focus — قواعد لغوية

Intensifiers المعززات اللفظية

- We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.
  نستخدم المعززات اللفظية لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.
- We can use really, very, or so to strengthen an adjective:
  يمكننا استخدام (really، very، أو so) لتعزيز الصفة:
  - I was really / very good at hiding!
  - Some skipping games are so difficult.
- We can also use really to strengthen a verb:
  يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (really) لتقوية (لتعزيز معنى) الفعل:
  - I really liked playing hopscotch.
  - I really feel happy when I am with you
- We can use at all to strengthen negative sentences:
  يمكننا أن نستخدم (at all) لتعزيز معنى الجمل المنفية:
  - He didn't like skipping at all!
  - Sandy isn't beautiful at all.
- We can also use quite to make the meaning of an adjective less strong:
  يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (quite) لجعل معنى الصفة أقل قوة:
  - I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.
  - I feel quite nervous before the exams.

تعزيز الصفات	تعزيز الأفعال	تعزيز النفي	جعل الصفة أقل
so / very / really	really	at all	quite

Practice

1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences in your notebook: ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل فى كراستك.

1. board - games - I - like - really - playing.

2. quite - Skateboarding - good - is.

3. football - think - I - so - is - exciting.

4. Nadia - marbles - pretty - very - some - has.

5. didn't - Asser - train - sets - at all - like.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I _____ liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.
   a. really b. very c. so d. at all
2. I thought action figures were _____ good, but I preferred train sets.
   a. at all b. quite c. quiet d. to
3. My brother was _____ good at football. He always beat me!
   a. very b. at all c. quiet d. but
4. You're _____ good at hide and seek. You always hide in the best places!
   a. quite b. to c. at all d. so
5. This book is not funny _____ .
   a. at all b. very c. so d. quite
6. I _____ enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.
   a. very b. really c. at all d. so



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. When I was young, my favorite toy was my _____.
   a action figure b bike c train set d skateboard
2. My skateboard is _____ with orange and yellow stickers.
   a black b red c blue d green
3. Playing at the _____ with friends was good fun.
   a school b park c garden d house
4. I get my first skateboard when I was _____.
   a seven b ten c eight d six

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My brother is really good at _____ and seek. البحر الأحمر - سفاجا (2023)
   a action b cuddly c hide d ride
2. I don't like skipping games because they are _____. المنوفية - الباجور (2024)
   a funny b difficult c good d great
3. Rana likes going to the park and going fast on her _____. الإسكندرية - العجمي (2023)
   a whiteboard b marbles c skateboard d helmet
4. I wear my _____ to protect my head. الأقصر - الأقصر (2023)
   a knee pad b helmet c shoes d skateboard
5. My sister was very good at making _____ stories. المنيا - العدوة (2024)
   a on b up c in d at
6. We use colored chalk to draw squares to play _____. القاهرة - الزاوية (2023)
   a hide and seek b skipping c running d hopscotch
7. It really _____ if you fall off a skateboard. المنوفية - أشمون (2023)
   a hurts b jumps c hearts d swims
8. Farah wears _____ to protect her knees. سوهاج - طهطا (2023)
   a helmets b hats c knee pads d sneakers

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. **They** had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. I got my first skateboard when I was eight.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I was younger, my favorite toy was my _____.
   a skateboard b train c teddy bear d ball
2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to _____.
   a stickers b skateboards c brothers d friends

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Where did you play with the skateboard?

   _____

4. When did you get your first skateboard?

   _____

5. Summarize the passage in one sentence.

   _____

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. difficult - are - games - **Some** - skipping - so. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)

   _____

2. playing - did - **What** - like - you - games?

   _____

3. riding - **I** - enjoyed - my - really - bike. المنوفية - تلا (2023)

   _____

4. sister - to - **I had** - with - practice - a lot - my.

   _____

5. and - thought - **I** - fun - seek - hide - was. البحيرة - دمنهور (2024)

   _____

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Shaimaa _____ **(very)** enjoys playing marbles. (2023) الإسكندرية - الجمرك
2. I don't like playing football _____ **(all)**. (2023) أسوان - إدفو
3. I think hopscotch is _____ **(all)** good, but I prefer hide and seek.
4. Randa is _____ **(at all)** polite, everyone likes her. (2023) البحيرة - الدلنجات
5. This toy is _____ **(quite)** interesting. I love it very much. (2024) الغربية - كفر الزيات
6. Tarek speaks English _____ **(quite)** well. He speaks like a teacher.
7. We are _____ **(so)** good at speaking, I think we need more practice.
8. It's _____ **(quite)** hot in the desert. We can't go there now.
9. Hany is a lazy student. Teachers don't like him _____ **(very)**.
10. He didn't like skipping _____ **(very)**. (2023) الأقصر - إسنا
11. This is a boring film. We don't like it _____ **(quite)**.
12. My son is _____ **(quite)** sick today so he couldn't go to school.
13. There is no milk in the fridge _____ **(very)**. (2023) المنوفية - تلا
14. The house is _____ **(quiet)** small. (2024) سوهاج - طهطا

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what was amina good at?

_____

2. I don t use it at all

_____

Lesson 3 ★ WE LOVED PLAYING WITH OUR TRAIN SET

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



button
زر



sail
شراع



stall
طاولة عرض البضائع (كشك)



trunk
خرطوم الفيل / زلومة

Other words كلمات أخرى

lemonade	عصير الليمون
machine	آلة
market	سوق
pie chart	رسم بياني دائري
store	محل
strong pieces	قطع قوية
wood	خشب
wheel	إطار سيارة / عجلة
parents	الوالدين

amazing	مدهش
bar graph	رسم بياني بالأشرطة
boat	قارب
computer games	العاب كمبيوتر
elephant	فيل
large table	طاولة كبيرة
tomatoes	طماطم
cloth	قماش

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ
shop	يتسوق	shopped	
smile	يبتسم	smiled	
move	يتحرك	moved	
play	يلعب	played	
push	يضغط على	pushed	

Irregular		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ
show	يعرض	showed	
sell	يبيع	sold	
think	يفكر	thought	
come	يأتي	came	
buy	يشتري	bought	
say	يقول	said	
choose	يختار	chose	

Definitions تعريفات

button	زر	what you touch to make a machine work.
drought	جفاف	when there isn't enough rain.
sail	شراع	strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move
stall	طاولة عرض (كشك)	a large table that you use to sell things from at a market.
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	the long nose of an elephant.

Study the following

1. We need some tomatoes from this stall.

- نحتاج بعض الطماطم من هذا الكشك.

2. The other toys on the stall were amazing.

- كانت اللعب الأخرى في الكشك رائعة.

3. There was an elephant which moved its trunk.

- كان هناك فيل يحرك زلومته.

4. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

- كان هناك قارب ذو شراع مصنوع من قماش جميل.

5. Wael bought some marbles yesterday.

- اشترى وائل بعض البلي أمس.

6. This game is called draughts.

- هذه اللعبة تسمى الداما.

7. We laugh when we play draughts.

- نحن نضحك عندما نلعب الداما.

8. She thought about the toy that she bought.

- فكرت في اللعبة التي اشترتها.

9. A drought is when there isn't enough rain.

- الجفاف يحدث عندما لا يكون هناك ما يكفي من المطر.

1 Listen to the story. Who bought a toy? استمع إلى القصة. من اشترى لعبة؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Ali was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day. Ali's feet hurt, and he really wanted to go home. "Are you OK, Ali?" asked Mom. "We've almost finished. We need tomatoes from this stall. Wait here, then I'll get you some lemonade." "Thanks. Mom," said Ali, He waited, and then he saw a stall with toys made from wood and metal. There were boats, trains, and animals. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables, so Ali asked if he could look at the toys. "OK," said Dad. "But we aren't buying toys today!"

"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking".

An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood. He saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled.

The man picked up a train. "Look at this," he said. He pushed a button under the train, and the wheels turned. When he put it down on the stall, it started to move.

"Do you like trains?" he asked.

"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago." Ali replied. "But this is brilliant".

Ali looked at the train again. It was small, but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set." He picked up the train, smiling. "I'll take it!" said Dad.

Ali laughed. "I thought you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!" Dad laughed. You can play with it too!"

2 Read the summary. Choose the correct word a, b, or c:

اقرأ الملخص واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Ali was ❶ _____ with his parents at the ❷ _____ . He saw a stall that sold ❸ _____ . A man showed him how a(n) ❹ _____ moved. Ali thought the toys were ❺ _____ . Ali's ❻ _____ came to see the toys, too. He liked the ❼ _____ , so he bought it. He said Ali ❽ _____ play with it.

1.	a. shopping	b. working	c. buying
2.	a. stall	b. store	c. market
3.	a. wood	b. lemonade	c. toys
4.	a. boat	b. elephant	c. train
5.	a. old	b. amazing	c. small
6.	a. mom	b. brother	c. dad
7.	a. train	b. animal	c. boat
8.	a. could	b. couldn't	c. didn't

Language focus

قواعد لغوية

➢ **Some verbs are followed by verb + -ing, for example:**

◉ بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل مضافاً اليه ing مثل:

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	stop	يتوقف	continue	يستكمل	finish	ينهي
hate	يكره	imagine	يتخيل	like	يحب	prefer	يفضل
love	يحب						

- I enjoy looking at the market stalls.
- I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago.

- هنا نلاحظ أننا استخدمنا looking & playing لأن الأفعال enjoy & stop يتبعان بالفعل مضافاً له ing وقِس على ذلك باقي الأفعال الأخرى التي ذكرناها بالأعلى.

3 Read and complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

اقرأ وأكمل الجمل بالصيغ الصحيحة للكلمات مما بين القوسين:

1. Amal imagined _____ **(fly)** in a plane.
2. Ghada prefers _____ **(play)** board games to skipping.
3. We enjoy _____ **(make up)** stories for our action figures.
4. My sister stopped _____ **(let)** me share her doll's house because I broke it.
5. They finished _____ **(paint)** the posters and tidied up.
6. Last night I finished _____ **(to doing)** my homework at 8 pm.

Pronunciation

◉ أحيانا ينطق المقطع "gh" كحرف «ف» ويرمز له بالرمز الصوتي /f/ أما المقطع "ght" ينطق مثل /t/.

(gh) pronounced as /f/		(ght) pronounced as /t/	
coughed	أسعل	bought	اشترى
draughts	لعبة الداما	brought	أحضر
enough	كافٍ	daughter	ابنة
laughed	ضحِك	drought	جفاف
laughter	الضحْك	thought	فكر
rough	خشن		
tough	صعب		

1 Listen. Do you hear the sound /f/ in these words? Circle Y (Yes) or N (No): استمع. هل تسمع صوت (f) في الكلمات القادمة، وضع دائرة حول نعم (Y) أو لا (N).

1. laughed	Y / N	2. thought	Y / N
3. bought	Y / N	4. coughed	Y / N
5. drought	Y / N	6. enough	Y / N
7. daughter	Y / N	8. brought	Y / N

2 Listen, read, and repeat: استمع واقرأ وردد:

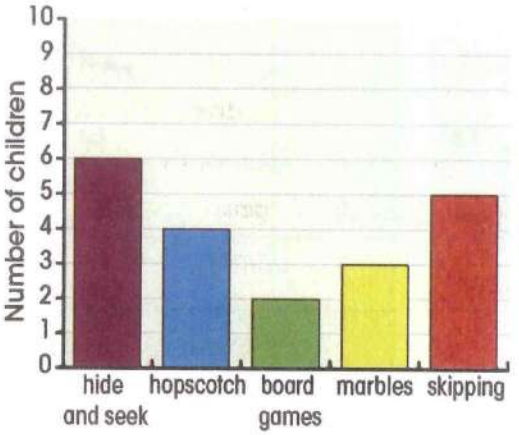
1. We laugh when we play draughts.
2. She thought about the toy that she bought.
3. A drought is when there isn't enough rain.

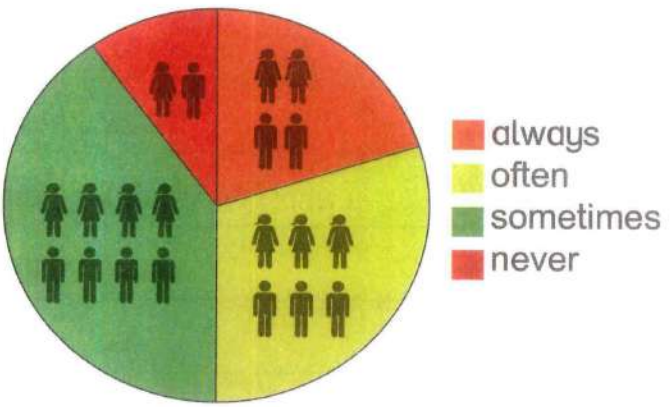


Math

GRAPHS الرسم البياني

◉ الرسم البياني هو عبارة عن تمثيل للمعلومات أو البيانات في شكل رسومات، بحيث يتم تمثيل البيانات إما من خلال الرسم البياني الشريطي (Bar Graph) أو الرسم البياني الدائري (Pie Chart).





Look at the graphs again and answer the questions:

انظر للرسم البياني وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Bar graph

1. Which group is the biggest? ---------
2. Which group is the smallest? ---------
3. How many children answered the question? ---------

Pie chart

1. Which group is the biggest? ---------
2. Which group is the smallest? ---------
3. What is the total of the numbers? ---------



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A _____ is a strong piece of cloth that make a boat move. القاهرة - الوايلي (2023)

a seed b sail c sea d soil

2. A "_____" is a place where you can buy things. الدقهلية - ميت غمر (2023)

a hospital b school c store d zoo

3. A drought is when there isn't enough _____. الغربية - كفر الزيات (2023)

a salt b rain c sugar d sand

4. A trunk is a long _____ of an elephant. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)

a leg b tail c nose d mouth

5. A "_____" is what you touch to make a machine work. الإسماعيلية - القصاصين (2023)

a butter b button c toy d pen

6. A _____ is a large table that you use to sell things from at a market. الإسكندرية - المنتزه (2023)

a ball b call c stall d mall

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: المنوفية - أشمون (2023)

train - sit - set - amazing

Eslam and his sister Nour, were at the market. They saw a stall that sold toys. Eslam loved the train ① _____ and wanted to buy it. A man showed him how a ② _____ moved. Nour bought a doll. They thought their toys were ③ _____.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. yesterday - bought - **Wael** - marbles - some. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2024)

_____

2. draughts - **This** - called - game - is. البحر الأحمر - سفاجا (2023)

_____

3. draughts - **We** - play - when - laugh - we. المنوفية - تلا (2023)

_____

4. our - train - playing - **We** - love - with - set. سوهاج - البلينا (2023)

_____

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I like **(eat)** ---------- pears. البحر الأحمر - سفاجا (2023)
2. Karma stops **(talk)** ---------- when the teacher enters the class.
3. My mom finishes **(to cook)** ---------- dinner at 7 o'clock.
4. Tarek enjoys **(listen)** ---------- to music. الفيوم - إطسا (2023)
5. Ahmed hates **(to driving)** ---------- in busy roads.
6. Children enjoy **(play)** ---------- in the park together. أسوان - إدفو (2023)
7. He prefers **(play)** ---------- football. الجيزة - الحوامدية (2023)
8. They finish **(study)** ---------- for their exams next week.
9. We imagine **(travelled)** ---------- the world one day. الأقصر - إسنا (2023)
10. Does he enjoy **(reads)** ---------- adventure books? الجيزة - الحوامدية (2023)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what is the favorite game in our class ----------
2. we imagined being in a plane over the city ----------

6 Write an email of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Marawan about activities at school, your name is Mohamed and your email address is mohamed@gmail.com and your friend's email address is marawan@yahoo.com

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Hide and seek – skipping

New Message		
To	----------	Cc Bcc
From	----------	
Subject	----------	

Lesson 4 ★ A DESCRIPTION OF MY FAVORITE GAME

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

description	وصف
games console	وحدة تحكم الألعاب

Other words كلمات أخرى

Ludo	لعبة لودو
modern	حديث
opinion	رأي
outside	الخارج
problem	مشكلة
reason	سبب
too much	أكثر مما ينبغي
adventure games	ألعاب المغامرات
although	بالرغم من
image	صورة
bricks	مكعبات
creative	مبدع
different places	أماكن مختلفة
However	ومع ذلك

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة		Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
describe يصف	described	beat يهزم	beat
enjoy يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	build يبني	built
share يشارك	shared	find يجد	found
solve يحل	solved	think يعتقد	thought

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

for about an hour	لمدة ساعة تقريبًا
kind of	نوع من
an hour a day	ساعة يوميًا
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع

Study the following

1. I love playing all kinds of games.

- أحب ممارسة جميع أنواع الألعاب.

2. I play games outside with my friends.

- ألعب الألعاب في الخارج مع أصدقائي.

3. We play hopscotch and board games at school.

- نلعب الحجلة والألعاب اللوحية في المدرسة.

4. I enjoy playing board games with my sister, but she often beats me.

- أنا أستمتع بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختي، لكنها غالبًا ما تهزمني.

5. My favorite games are video games.

- ألعابي المفضلة هي ألعاب الفيديو.

6. I play for about an hour on the weekend.

- ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

7. You can build cities using different bricks.

- يمكنك بناء مدن باستخدام مكعبات مختلفة.

8. I can be creative and make something new.

- أستطيع أن أكون مبدعًا وأصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

9. I share a new games console with my sister.

- أشارك وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة مع أختي.

10. My sister enjoys playing adventure games.

- تستمتع أختي بلعب ألعاب المغامرة.

11. You can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem.

- يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شيء مهم أو حل مشكلة.

12. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much.

- يمكن أن تشكل ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا.

13. What's your favorite game?

- ما هي لعبتك المفضلة؟

14. It's a board game called Ludo.

- إنها لعبة لوحية تسمى لودو.

1 Read Belal's description and know how often he plays video games. اقرأ وصف بلال واعرف كم مرة يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر:

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:

My favorite video game لعبة الكمبيوتر المفضلة لي
by Belal كتبه بلال

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me!

أحب ممارسة جميع أنواع الألعاب. ألعب الألعاب في الخارج مع أصدقائي، وفي المدرسة نلعب الحجلة والألعاب اللوحية. أنا أستمتع أيضًا بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختي، على الرغم من أنها غالبًا ما تهزمني!

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

ألعابي المفضلة هي ألعاب الكمبيوتر. أنا لا ألعبهم كثيرًا، رغم ذلك. ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. انها ممتعة! ألعابي المفضلة هي تلك التي أقوم فيها ببناء المدن. لقد صنعت مدينة كبيرة حقًا باستخدام مكعبات مختلفة. حيث بها حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أحب هذه الألعاب لأنه يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new **games console**, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

بعض الصور في ألعاب الفيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلت على وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة، وأتشاركها مع أختي. إنها تستمتع بلعب ألعاب المغامرة، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شيء مهم أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكن أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون ممتعة أيضًا، لأنها مثيرة للغاية.

Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

يمكن أن تشكل ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا أو مثيرًا للغاية. يمكنك غالبًا اللعب مع أصدقائك أيضًا.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. My favorite games are _____.
   a board games b video games c marbles d hopscotch
2. I play video games for about _____ on the weekend.
   a an hour b two hours c three hours d four hours
3. Video games can be _____ when you play them too much.
   a great b good c a problem d exciting
4. Video games can be great when you do something that is very _____ or exciting.
   a creative b boring c bad d crazy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like playing _____ outside.
   a hopscotch b video games c board games d action figures
2. Ludo is a _____ game. المنوفية - تلا (2023)
   a broad b bread c bored d board
3. My sister always _____ when we play board games. سوهاج - البلينا (2023)
   a bites b beats c pets d seats
4. We use _____ to build things.
   a toys b bricks c boards d games
5. My favorite _____ are video games. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)
   a books b games c pencils d fruits

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الغربية - السنطة (2023)

creative - animals - cities - outside

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often. I play them for about an hour on the weekend. My favorite games are ones where you can build ❶ _____. I've made a big city that has ❷ _____ and plants. I love them because you can be ❸ _____ and make something new.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

الفيوم - إطسا (2023)

Playing video games is enjoyable and all of the children like playing video games. Video games have their pros and **cons**. On the positive side, video games can improve the ability to solve problems, make new things and to be creative. They also make you feel excited to connect with your friends all the time. On the other hand, playing video games too much can affect your health because you keep sitting most of the time.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**cons**" refers to _____.

a good things b bad things c enjoying things d exciting things

2. Video games can affect your _____.

a problem b health c board d money

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the suitable title for this passage?

4. What are the pros of playing video games?

5. What are the cons of playing video games?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. creative - new - **I can** - be - and - something - make.

2. playing - games - **I** - kinds - love - all - of. المنوفية - بركة السبع (2023)

3. sister - console - **I share** - a new - with - my - games. البحيرة - دمنهور (2024)

4. games - playing - sister - adventure - **My** - enjoys.

5. **My** - games - video - favorite - games - are. المنوفية - شبين الكوم (2024)

6. bricks - build - cities - **You** - different - can - using. الإسكندرية - العجمي (2023)

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what's your favorite game

2. video games can be a problem

7 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

A description of your favorite video game

Guiding questions

1- What is it called?
2- How do you play it?

Review

Key vocabulary



action figure
مجسم شخصية كرتونية



board game
لعبة لوحية



cuddly toy
دمية العناق



doll's house
بيت الدمية



marbles
بلي



rollerblades
حذاء بعجلات



skateboard
لوح تزلج



train set
نموذج القطار اللعبة



hide and seek
لعبة الاستغماية



hopscotch
لعبة الحجلة



skipping
لعبة نط الحبل



button
زر



sail
شراع



stall
طاولة عرض البضائع
(كشك)



trunk
خرطوم الفيل / زلومة

have a go	يجرب
description	وصف

beat	يهزم
make up	يؤلف / يخترع
games console	وحدة تحكم الألعاب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ
invent	يخترع	invented		beat	يهزم	beat	
climb	يتسلق	climbed		have a go	يجرب	had a go	
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed		make up	يخترع	made up	
practice	يمارس	practiced		fall	يسقط	fell	
prefer	يفضل	preferred		seek	يبحث	sought	
shop	يتسوق	shopped		run	يجري	ran	
move	يتحرك	moved		draw	يرسم	drew	
describe	يصف	described		hide	يختفي	hid	
share	يشارك	shared		show	يعرض	showed	
solve	يحل	solved		sell	يبيع	sold	
				buy	يشتري	bought	

Language focus قواعد لغوية

Intensifiers المعززات اللفظية

- نستخدم المعززات اللفظية لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.
- يمكننا استخدام (really، very، أو so) لتعزيز الصفة:

- I was really / very good at hiding! - Some skipping games are so difficult.

- يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (really) لتقوية (لتعزيز معنى) الفعل:

- I really liked playing hopscotch. - I really feel happy when I am with you.

- يمكننا أن نستخدم (at all) لتعزيز معنى الجمل المنفية:

- He didn't like skipping at all! - Sandy isn't beautiful at all.

- يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (quite) لجعل معنى الصفة أقل قوة:

- I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

➢ **Some verbs are followed by verb + -ing, for example:**

- بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل مضافاً اليه ing مثل:

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	stop	يتوقف	continue	يستكمل	finish	ينهي
hate	يكره	imagine	يتخيل	like	يحب	prefer	يفضل
love	يحب						

- I enjoy looking at the market stalls.
- I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago.

مهارات الكتابة



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 1

1

New Message

To	ahmed89@gmail.com	Cc Bcc
From	rana@yahoo.com	
Subject	My favorite toy	

Dear Ahmed,
How are you? I hope you are fine. Thanks for your last email. I am writing this email to tell you about my favorite toy. My favorite toy is my doll's house. I love arranging the furniture and making up different stories for the dolls. It's so much fun! I also enjoy playing with my train set, building bricks and watching the trains go around. What's your favorite toy? I hope you write to me soon.
Love,
Rana

Lesson 3

2

New Message

To	marawan@ yahoo.com	Cc Bcc
From	mohamed@gmail.com	
Subject	Activities at school	

Dear Marawan,
How are you? I hope you are fine. Thanks for your last email. I am writing this email to tell you about activities at school. At school, we have so much fun during breaks. When we play hide and seek, we run around looking for the best places to hide. Another favorite activity is skipping, where we take turns jumping and trying to learn new skills. It's a great way to stay active and have fun with our friends. Every day, I look forward to these activities!
Love,
Mohamed

Lesson 4

A description of your favorite video game

3 My favorite video game is called "PES." It's a game about football. It's a game where you control the whole team, kicking the ball and scoring goals. You can pick your favorite players, like Messi or Ronaldo. In this game you feel like you have a football playground at home.

Al-Azhar Test on Unit 8

My action figures

4 My action figures are my favorite toys. I loved playing with them. They all have special powers of their own. I made up lots of games for them. They're my best friends. Playing with my action figures always makes my day full of fun adventures.

Test on Unit 8

Playing games

5 Playing games is good for us in lots of different ways. It helps us to be creative, friendly, and problem solvers. Whether it's a board game, a video game, or an outdoor activity. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends. It's a fun way to learn while enjoying time with friends and family.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

hiding - project - interesting - doing - seek

Younis: What are you ❶ _____?
Tarek : I am doing a school ❷ _____ about toys and games.
Younis: That's really ❸ _____!
Tarek : I started by the game of hide and ❹ _____.
Younis: I like this game because I am good at ❺ _____.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	action figure	rollerblades	whiteboard	cuddly toy	_____
2	play	find	action	have	_____
3	hide and seek	musical chairs	hopscotch	skip	_____
4	laughed	enough	bought	coughed	_____
5	looking	playing	painting	stop	_____

3 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. At school, we use chalk to make a/an _____ game. البحيرة - الدلنجات (2023)
   a cuddly b action c hopscotch d skipping
2. I think hopscotch is _____ good, but I prefer hide and seek.
   a quiet b quite c at all d ready
3. The words "rough" and " _____" have the /f/ sound.
   a bought b daughter c coughed d drought
4. Does he enjoy _____ adventure books? القليوبية - قليوب (2023)
   a reading b reads c read d to reading
5. I really enjoyed riding my _____ when I was younger.
   a marble b bike c doll's house d action figure
6. Some skipping games are _____ difficult.
   a so b to c at all d every
7. I put my old toys in a _____. البحيرة - التوفيقية (2023)
   a book b box c fox d dog
8. They finished _____ the posters and tidied up.
   a paint b paints c painted d painting
9. A drought is when there isn't enough _____.
   a air b place c rain d pain

10. I like making up games for my _____ figures.

a skate b doll c action d skipping

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

My name is Youssef. When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Youssef play with his skateboard? _____
2. When did he get his skateboard? _____
3. Who did he play with? _____

B- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Youssef's favorite toy was a/an _____.

a skateboard b whiteboard c doll's house d action figure

5. Youssef had to wear a _____ and knee pads.

a T-shirt b helmet c cap d hat

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. sister - played - Medo - with - marbles - his. _____
2. enjoyed - really - playing - Taha - outside. _____
3. favorite - What's - game - your? _____
4. my - games - play - with - I - friends. _____
5. found - Noha - her - box of - toys - old. _____

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

My action figures

toys - powers - made up - day full - fun

_____

_____

Test on Unit 8



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Nour liked _____.
   a food b reading c cooking d sports
2. Nour really enjoyed playing _____ when she was younger.
   a indoors b inside c outside d at home
3. Nour liked playing _____.
   a tennis b marbles c basketball d volleyball
4. She was quite good at _____.
   a football b hide and seek c tennis d skipping

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My friend always _____ me at board games. I never win. العبور - القليوبية (2023)
   a shops b thinks c beats d says
2. I can go skating on my skateboard or my _____. القاهرة - الزاوية (2023)
   a train set b rollerblades c cuddly toy d doll's house
3. My sister is really good at _____and seek. البحر الأحمر - سفاجا (2024)
   a action b cuddly c hide d ride

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الدقهلية - ميت غمر (2023)

ground - game - hide - playing

Playing outside in the park is always so fun. We love playing ① _____ and seek between the trees and bushes. Sometimes we draw hopscotch squares on the ② _____ and take turns hopping through them, trying not to stand on the wrong square. Skipping is another favorite ③ _____; we see who can jump the most without falling.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: قرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Salma's birthday party was yesterday. Her brother, Mohamed, surprised her with a soft, cuddly toy that she liked on the shop stall last week. Salma was so happy and thanked her kind brother. As the party ended, she ran to her bedroom, holding the new toy in her arms. She placed it on her bed and started to play with it. From that day on, the cuddly toy became her favorite friend. Salma enjoyed it and **made up** lots of games for it.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Salma's birthday _____ was yesterday.

a game b cake c party d food

2. The underlined word "**made up**" means _____.

a tried b invented c invited d enjoyed

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the suitable title for this passage?

_____

4. How did her brother surprise her?

_____

5. What's Salma's favorite toy?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. toy - set - **My** - was - favorite - a train. القليوبية - بنها (2023)

_____

2. visit - the weekend - grandma - **Did** - on - you? الإسكندرية - العجمي (2023)

_____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was _____ **(at all)** good at hiding! أسيوط - البحاري (2023)

2. She loves _____ **(play)** with her toy. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2023)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. how many children answered the questions

2. i can be creative and make something new

8 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Playing games

Guiding questions

1. Is playing games good for us?
2. What do we learn from playing?

Theme 3

Unit 9

I discover myself

What's the story?

ما القصة؟



Objectives of the Unit

أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen and read about Goha and his stories.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن جحا وقصصه.

2. Understand and discuss what makes a good story.

- يفهم الطالب ويناقش ما يجعل القصة جيدة.

3. Use the past continuous.

- يستخدم الطالب زمن الماضي المستمر.

4. Write the beginning and ending of a story.

- يكتب الطالب بداية ونهاية قصة.

5. Listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.

- يستمع الطالب إلى قصة قصيرة عن ولد وذئب.

6. Use sequencing adverbs.

- يستخدم الطالب ظروف تسلسل الاحداث (فى قصة).

7. Learn how to say words with the sound /w/.

- يتعلم الطالب كيف يقول كلمات بها أصوات الحرف /w/.

8. Take part in a cooperative storytelling project.

- يشارك الطالب فى مشروع تعاونى لسرد القصة.

Lesson 1 ★ Goha's stories

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

narrator	الراوى
moral	درس أخلاقى
setting	وقت ومكان (القصة)
characters	الشخصيات
ending	النهاية

Vocabulary

details	التفاصيل
journey	رحلة
stories	قصص
country	دولة
differences	اختلاف
Morocco	دولة المغرب
review	مراجعة نقدية
countryside	الريف
turn	دور
both	كلاهما
Sudan	دولة السودان
Algeria	دولة الجزائر

Adjectives صفات

great	عظيم
right	محق
tired	مُتَعب
funny	مضحك
clever	ماهر
different	مختلف
popular	شائع

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

in fact	فى الحقيقة
known by	معروفة بـ
Me, too.	وأنا أيضًا.
take turns	يتبادل أدوار
write about	يكتب عن
all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
happen يحدث	happened
pass يمر	passed
carry يحمل	carried

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
write يكتب	wrote
ride يركب	rode
make يجعل	made
know يعرف	knew
teach يدرس	taught
give يعطى	gave
let يدع	let

Definitions تعريفات

Characters شخصيات	the people or animals in a story.	الناس أو الحيوانات فى قصة.
Ending النهاية	the last part of a story.	أخر جزء فى القصة.
Setting المكان	the time and place where a story happens.	الوقت والمكان الذى يحدث في قصة.
Moral درس اخلاقى	the lesson you learn from a story.	درس تتعلمه من القصة.
Narrator الراوى	the person who tells the story.	الشخص الذى يحكى القصة.

Study the following

1. **I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories.**
   - اكتب مراجعة نقدية عن واحدة من قصص جحا.
2. **The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey.**
   - القصة عن رجل يذهب إلى السوق مع ابنه والحمار.
3. **The man and his son take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey.**
   - يتبادل الرجل وابنه الادوار فى ركوب الحمار لان الرحلة طويلة.
4. **In the ending of the story they both carry the donkey.**
   - يحمل كلاهما الحمار فى نهاية القصة.
5. **His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?**
   - قصصه مضحكة وذكية؟ أليس كذلك؟
6. **In fact, his stories are popular all over the world.**
   - فى الحقيقة قصصه منتشرة فى كل انحاء العالم.
7. **But he's known by different names.**
   - ولكنه معروف باسماء مختلفة.

8 **Are the stories the same in every country?** - هل القصص متطابقة فى كل دولة؟

9 **There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us.** - يوجد بعض الاختلافات ولكن فى القصص درس أخلاقي يريد جحا أن يعلمنا إياه

10 **That you can't make everyone happy.** - وهو أنك لا تستطيع إسعاد الجميع.

1 Listen and read. Why do the man and his son carry the donkey? استمع واقرأ. لماذا الرجل وابنه يحملان الحمار ؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?

Lama : I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting(1) is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters(2) - the man and his son - take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending(3) of the story, they both carry the donkey!

Mom : Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

Lama : Yes, they are. He's a great narrator(4), too. I love the details(5) he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.

Mom : So do I. In fact, his stories are popular(6) all over the world. But he's known(7) by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

Lama : Are the stories the same in every country?

Mom : There are some differences, but they all have a moral(8) that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?

Lama : That you can't make everyone(9) happy.

Mom : I think Goha is right about(10) that!

Lama : Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!

Arabic Meaning

١- الوقت والمكان
٢- شخصيات
٣- النهاية
٤- راوى
٥- التفاصيل
٦- شائعة
٧- معروف
٨- درس أخلاقي
٩- الجميع
١٠- محق بشأن



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed goes to the _____ with his family.
   a town b city c countryside d beach
2. Ahmed's sister _____ the chickens and goats.
   a eats b feeds c bakes d hates
3. Ahmed's father helps on the _____ .
   a farm b school c club d park
4. Ahmed's mother bakes _____ .
   a cakes b bread c lunch d fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. _____ are the people or animals in a story. الأقصر - إسنا (2024)
   a Settings b Characters c Morals d Countries
2. The _____ is a person who tells the story. بني سويف - بني سويف (2023)
   a character b father c narrator d moral
3. The _____ of the story is (never be selfish). الغربية - السنطة (2024)
   a narrator b moral c brain d setting
4. The ending is the _____ part of a story. بورسعيد - بورسعيد (2023)
   a third b last c first d second
5. The _____ is the time and place where a story happened. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)
   a narrator b character c setting d moral

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الجيزة - أوسيم (2023)

angry - funny - setting - narrator

We read stories to learn the moral at the ending of the story. The characters and the ❶ _____ show us the events. The ❷ _____ is also important. Stories also make us happy and laugh a lot. For example, Goha's stories are both ❸ _____ and clever.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. funny - stories - **Goha's** - are. (2023) أسيوط - البدارى

2. the same - **Are** - country - stories - every - in? (2024) سوهاج - طهطا

3. everyone - can't - **You** - happy - make. (2023) الغربية - شرق طنطا

4. known - **He** - by - is - names - different. (2023) أسيوط - الفتح

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. goha is a great narrator

2. what're you doing

6 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

(2023) المنوفية - بركة السبع

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Goha's story about the donkey

Guiding questions

1- Where was the setting?

2- What's the moral of the story?

Lesson 2 ★ A message in a bottle

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

grandparents	الأجداد
message	رسالة
glass bottle	زجاجة من الزجاج
trash	قمامة
score a goal	يحرز هدف
text message	رسالة نصية

a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق
space	الفضاء
by the sea	بجوار البحر
better idea	فكرة أفضل
path	ممشى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
pass يمر	passed
surf يتزلج على الماء	surfed
arrive يصل	arrived
fold يطوى	folded

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
throw يرمى	threw
forget ينسى	forgot
send يرسل	sent
give يعطى	gave
come يأتى	came
ring يرن	rang

Study the following

1. **Tom's grandparents lived by the sea.**
   - عاش أجداد "توم" بجوار البحر.
2. **The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful.**
   - كان الشاطئ بجانب منزلهم هادئ وجميل.
3. **Let's write a message in a bottle.**
   - دعنا نكتب رسالة فى زجاجة.
4. **Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper.**
   - غسل الجد الزجاجة الزجاجية واعطى توم قلم جاف وقطعة من الورق.
5. **Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.**
   - ذهب توم واجداده إلى الشاطئ ورموا الزجاجة فى البحر.
6. **Many years passed, and Tom grew up.**
   - مرت سنوات عديدة وكبر توم.
7. **He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle.**
   - نسى توم واجداده الرسالة فى الزجاجة.
8. **Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.**
   - ثم فى احد الايام كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده الرسالة.

1 Listen and read the beginning of a story. استمع واقرأ بداية القصة.

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص.

Arabic Meaning

١- تزلجوا على الماء
٢- قمامة
٣- يطوى
٤- عنوان

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed(1), and played games on the sand.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash.(2)"

"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle." "What's a message in a bottle?"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold(3) the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."

Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma.

"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it?"

Hello!

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue.

What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me! My email address(4) is tom@beachnet.usa

From Tom

The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message...

Language focus

قواعد لغوية

Past continuous الماضى المستمر

1 Usage الاستخدام

١ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمر فى وقت معين فى الماضي ويمكن أن يستخدم لسرد القصص فى الماضى.

٢ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر.

2 Form التكوين

◉ يتكون من:

I / He / She / It, اسم مفرد + was
They / We / You, اسم جمع + were } + V + ing

- She was reading a book at nine o'clock yesterday.
- They were walking their dog yesterday afternoon.

3 When أداة الربط

◉ يستخدم الماضى المستمر لربط حدثين فى الماضى، الحدث المستمر فى الماضى المستمر والحدث الثانى المفاجئ فى الماضى البسيط وذلك باستخدام أداة الربط (when).

Past continuous + when + past simple

When + past simple + past continuous

- I was reading a book when my dad came home.
- When she woke up, I was reading a story.

4 Negative النفي

I / He / She / It, اسم مفرد + wasn't
We / You / They, اسم جمع + weren't } + V + ing

- He wasn't riding a bike.
- They weren't doing their homework.

4 Question السؤال

كلمة استفهام + was / were } + subject + V + ing?

- What was happening yesterday?
- Where were you yesterday morning?

Practice

2 Complete the sentences with the past continuous or past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

اكمل الجمل باستخدام زمن الماضى المستمر أو الماضى البسيط للافعال بين القوسين:

1. Fatima **was doing** (do) her homework when she **got** (get) a text message from her friend.
2. Ghada and I ..... (play) computer games when her brother ..... (arrive) home.
3. I ..... (not watch) TV when you ..... (call) me.
4. ..... you ..... (look) at your phone when I ..... (see) you in the street?

3 What was happening yesterday? Use the past continuous to describe the pictures.

ماذا كان يحدث أمس؟ استخدم الماضى المستمر لوصف الصور .







Hazem watch football match / Egypt score goal	Dad / read newspaper / Lina come	Ayman ride bike/phone ring
Hazem was watching football when Egypt scored a goal.	.....	.....

4 Read the start of another story. Underline examples of the past continuous and circle examples of the past simple.

اقرأ بداية قصة أخرى. ضع خطًا تحت أمثلة زمن الماضى المستمر ودائرة حول أمثلة الماضى البسيط:

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him. Near the house, there was ... .



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. There are _____ characters in the story.
   a two b three c four d five
2. The _____ was the setting of the story.
   a park b beach c school d desert
3. The boy put the message in the _____ bottle.
   a glass b plastic c paper d wood
4. The grandfather sent the _____ to the boy.
   a bottle b message c idea d glass

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الغربية - السنطة (2023)

called - message - newspaper - riding

Yesterday afternoon was a busy day. I was watching a football match when my father came. My mother was reading the ❶ _____ when the phone rang. My brother Hisham was ❷ _____ his bike. My sister Noha was doing her homework when she got a text ❸ _____ from her friend.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. writing - a message - **I'm** - a bottle - in. سوهاج - البلينا (2024)

_____

2. put - it - **Let's** - trash - in - the. البحر الأحمر - سفاجا (2023)

_____

3. your - **What** - favorite - are - things?

_____

4. surfed - games - **They** - the sand - on - and - played.

_____

5. grandparents - lived - **His** - the sea - by. الإسماعيلية - القصاصين (2024)

_____

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. My dad was _____ **(sleep)** yesterday evening. المنوفية - تلا (2024)
2. Kareem was doing his homework _____ **(what)** the phone rang. الدقهلية - ميت غمر (2023)
3. Dina and her mom _____ **(was)** walking by the sea.
4. I was playing games when my brother _____ **(arrive)**. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2023)
5. _____ **(Are)** you writing a message when I came?
6. My brother and I _____ **(was)** riding a bike. الغربية - كفر الزيات (2024)
7. Where were you _____ **(go)** yesterday morning? سوهاج - المراغة (2023)
8. Adel _____ **(isn't)** studying English when his teacher came.
9. We were traveling to the city when grandpa _____ **(call)** us. الشرقية - ديرب نجم (2024)
10. She was _____ **(walk)** home, when she met her friend. بورسعيد - بورسعيد (2023)
11. What _____ **(is)** she doing at 2 o'clock yesterday? الغربية - شرق طنطا (2024)
12. The boys were _____ **(played)** in the park yesterday. الغربية - سمنود (2023)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. What s a message in a bottle

_____

2. we were walking along the path

_____

Lesson 3 ★ The Boy who cried wolf

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



shepherd
راعى الغنم



villager
ساكن القرية



wolf
ذئب



sheep
أغنام

Adjectives صفات

alone	بمفرده
angry	غاضب
lonely	وحيد
bored	شاعر بالملل
sorry	ندمان

Other words كلمات أخرى



suddenly	فجأة
village	قرية
while	اثناء
field	حقل
truth	حقيقة
main character	شخصية رئيسية
untrue stories	قصص غير حقيقية
once	ذات مرة
hill	تل
tools	أدوات
joke	مزحة / نكتة

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر



worry about	قلق بشأن
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
look after	يعتنى بـ
have fun	يستمتع
busy working	مشغول في العمل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
annoy	يضايق / يزعج	annoyed
believe	يصدق	believed
save	ينقذ	saved
waste	يضيع	wasted
rest	يستريح	rested
shout	يصيح	shouted
kill	يقتل	killed
appear	يظهر	appeared

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
tell	يخبر	told
do	يفعل	did
say	يقول	said
lie	يرقد	lay

Study the following

1. Once there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village.
   - يحكى أن كان هناك ولد يدعى بيتر وكان يعيش فى قرية.
2. He worked alone as a shepherd looking after sheep.
   - كان يعمل وحيدا كراعى للغنم حيث يعتنى بالأغنام.
3. Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep.
   - كان بيتر نائم على الحشائش ويشاهد اغنامه.
4. Peter felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun.
   - كان بيتر يشعر بالوحدة والملل فقرر أن يحصل على بعض من المتعة.
5. He shouted "Wolf" and the villagers came to help and save the sheep.
   - لقد صرخ ذئب وجاء سكان القرية ليساعدوه وينقذوا الغنم.
6. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep.
   - كان القرويون منشغلين فى العمل لكنهم كانوا قلقين على أغنام بيتر.
7. He said there was no wolf and it was a joke.
   - لقد قال لهم أنه لايوجد ذئب وإنها نكتة.
8. The villagers were angry and said he shouldn't waste their time.
   - لقد غضب سكان القرية وقالوا له لايجب أن يضيع أوقاتهم.
9. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.
   - أخيرًا، جاء الذئب الحقيقى. واكل الغنم كان بيتر ندمان جدًا.

Language focus

ملاحظات لغوية

Adverbs of sequencing ظروف تسلسل الأحداث

First أولا → Next فيما بعد (التالى) → Then ثم → After that بعد ذلك → Finally أخيراً

◉ تستخدم ظروف تسلسل الاحداث لتوضيح ترتيب الاحداث فى قصة.

1 Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Once, there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a shepherd(1) looking after sheep. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested(2) while the sheep ate the delicious grass.

One day, Peter was lying(3) on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely(4) and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers(5) in the field below: Next, he lay down and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. There is no wolf! It was a joke(6)! he said. The villagers were very angry and said, "Peter, you must tell the truth!" After that, they left Peter and went back to work.

Then, Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry, "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy!" they said.

Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real(7) wolf appeared. Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him, but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep. Peter understood(8) why no one came, and he was very sorry(9).

Arabic Meaning

١- راعي غنم
٢- استراح
٣- مستلقى
٤- شعر بالوحدة
٥- قرويون
٦- مزحة
٧- حقيقى
٨- فهم
٩- ندمان

2 Number the story in the correct order. Then complete with the adverbs of sequencing from the box.

رقم القصة بالترتيب الصحيح. ثم أكمل بظروف تسلسل الأحداث من القائمة.

After that **Finally** **First** **Next** **Then**

The Boy Who Cried Wolf

a. _____, he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. ☐

b. _____, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry. ☐

c. _____, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. ☐

d. Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea. 1

e. _____, Peter did it again. ☐

f. _____, villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. ☐

Pronunciation

W Wh

١- ينطق حرف /w/ مثل نطق حرف (وَ) فى اللغة العربية مع ضم الشفتين:

W



wolf ذئب



walk يمشى



water مياة



went ذهب



wave يشاور



west غرب

٢- لاحظ فى نطق حرف /wh/ أن حرف h صامت (لا ينطق) حيث أن "wh" ينطق من حرف "w":

Wh



white أبيض



whisper يهمس



whale حوت

where? أين (للمكان)؟ when? متى؟ / عندما what? ما / ماذا؟

The stressed syllable المقطع المشدد (فى النطق)

١ - يقصد بـ stressed syllable هو المقطع المشدد فى النطق فى الكلمة وينطق هذا المقطع بصوت اعلى واوضح من باقى المقاطع.

٢ - اذا كانت الكلمة مكونة من مقطع واحد يتم التشديد على هذا المقطع مثل:

happy - like - send

٣- إذا احتوت الكلمة علي "prefix" البادئة فأن المقطع المشدد يكون فى الكلمة الاساسية وليس البادئة.

unhappy	سعيد	dislike	يكره	resend	يعيد إرسال		
untidy	غير مرتب	disagree	لايوافق	incorrect	غير صحيح		
replay	يرد	indoors	بالداخل				

1 Complete the words with w or wh. Listen, check and repeat.

أكمل الكلمات بحرف w أو wh . استمع وتأكد وردد.

1. ____ en
2. ____ alk
3. ____ at
4. ____ ave
5. ____ ere
6. ____ est

2 Listen, read, and repeat the sentence: استمع واقرأ وردد الجمل:

1. A white whale went west.
2. A wolf whispered, "What? When?"

3 Look, read, and listen. Then underline the stressed syllable in the words in bold: انظر واقرأ ثم استمع. ضع خط تحت المقطع المشدد فى الكلمات المحددة:

1

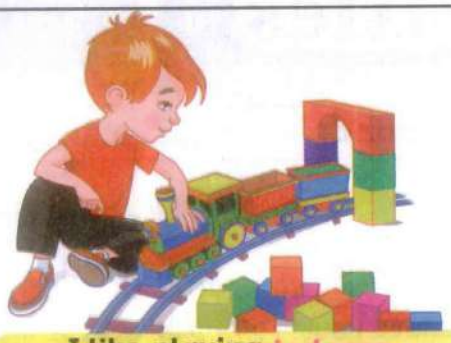


Let's resend the message.

2



Why do you dislike surfing?

3 

I like playing indoors.

4 

He was unhappy.

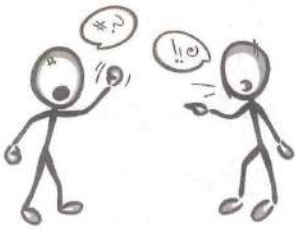
4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Say them using the correct stress. Then listen and check:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات فى القائمة. قل الكلمات باستخدام التشديد فى النطق الصحيح. ثم استمع وتأكد.

replay incorrect disagree untidy

1 1+1=3

This answer is incorrect

2 

Why do you _____ with him?

3 

The room is _____ .

4 

Please _____ the video.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. You should always tell the _____. الغربية - شرق طنطا (2024)

a false b truth c books d incorrect

2. If you tell _____ stories, no one will believe you. الغربية - غرب طنطا (2023)

a unhappy b untrue c untidy d unkind

3. My father works as a _____. He looks after sheep. الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة (2024)

a doctor b nurse c guide d shepherd

4. My friend told me a _____. It was funny. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)

a book b joke c notebook d boy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

believe - sorry - funny - moral

Yesterday, I read the story of the boy and the wolf. I learnt that I shouldn't tell untrue stories. People won't ❶ _____ me. When I'm in a problem, no one will help me. The ❷ _____ of the story is useful. The boy felt ❸ _____ at the end because the wolf ate his sheep because the villagers didn't help him.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time, there lived four cows in a little forest, every day they used to eat fresh grass in a large green field and drink fresh water from the river. They were **kind** friends and helped each other. They decided to do everything together, so the lions couldn't attack **them** for food.

One day, the four cows fought and each one started to eat grass in a different place and they stopped to help each other. The lions watched them and decided to have the chance and ate them one by one.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to the _____.

a water b grass c lions d cows

2. The adjective "**kind**" in the text means _____.

a good b bad c naughty d nervous

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Who ate the four cows one by one? _____

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. _____

5. How many cows lived in the forest? _____

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. Were you _____ **(do)** your homework at nine yesterday?
2. The wolf came and _____ **(eats)** the sheep.
3. She was studying when the lights _____ **(go)** out.
4. We were _____ **(swim)** in the sea at 4 pm yesterday evening. البحيرة - دمنهور (2023)

5 Write an email of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Hoda to tell her about the story of the shepherd and the villagers. Your name is Laila and your email address is laila15@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is hoda25@gmail.com.

The boy who cried wolf

Guiding questions

1- What did the boy do to have fun?

2- Why were the villagers angry?

New Message		
To	.....	Cc Bcc
From	.....	
Subject	.....	

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 4 ★ Writing: The ending of a story

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

the coast	الساحل
sailing	الإبحار
excited	متحمس
long way	طريق طويل

France	فرنسا
Biarritz	بياريتز (بلدة فى فرنسا)
reply	رد
How far?	كم البعد؟

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
reply	يرد	replied
decide	يقرر	decided

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
feel	يشعر	felt
find	يجد	found
forget	ينسى	forgot

Study the following

1. Many years passed and Tom grew up.
   - مرت سنوات عديدة وكبر توم.
2. We have a reply to our message in a bottle.
   - لدينا رد على رسالتنا فى زجاجة.
3. A man in France found the message.
   - وجدت رجل فى فرنسا الرسالة.
4. This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.
   - هذا يعنى بانها سافرت أكثر من ٦٠٠ كيلو متر.
5. You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day.
   - مرحبا بك أن تأتى وتزورنى في فرنسا يوم ما.
6. But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!
   - لكنه طريق طويل، لذلك دعنا نسافر بالطائرة.

1 Read this ending of the story on page 38. What does Tom decide to do?
اقرأ نهاية القصة فى صفحة ٣٨. ماذا يقرر توم أن يفعل؟

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot(1) about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message(2).

Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle!

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house.

"A man in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is his reply(3)."

R **From:** Hugo
To: Tom

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz(4), France. I live on the coast and I love sailing(5) my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water - your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.

You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

Tom was very excited. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!"

Later(6) that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.

"What are you doing, Tom?"

"I'm writing to Hugo."

"Why are you going to visit him?"

"You and I are both going to visit him!"

"That's a great idea," laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

Arabic Meaning
١- نسى
٢- رسالة
٣- رد
٤- مدينة بياريتز
٥- الإبحار
٦- لاحقًا



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. We enjoy _____ stories.

a playing b buying c reading d sending

2. The _____ teach us the moral.

a settings b narrators c endings d events

3. Good stories should have _____ .

a endings b settings c narrators d messages

4. The endings tell us what the characters feel at the _____ of the story.

a beginning b first c end d middle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My father travels a lot to China. He travels by _____ . القليوبية - طوخ (2024)

a bike b camel c plane d plate

2. We went on a _____ trip on water. سوهاج - البلينا (2023)

a train b boat c bike d plane

3. They like _____ their boat on the Nile. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)

a eating b selling c sailing d swimming

4. I live on the _____ , so I can see the sea.

a farm b coast c village d river

5. My friend sent a _____ to my message. القليوبية - قها (2024)

a weekend b bottle c boat d reply

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. sailing - my - I - boat - love. (2024) الإسكندرية - العجمي

2. replies - the - Who - message - to? (2024) المنيا - العدوة

3. found - A man - France - the message - in. (2024) أسيوط - البداري

4. have - We - a reply - our - to - message. (2024) البحيرة - شبراخيت

5. went - Tom - his - to - grandparents' - house. (2024) كفر الشيخ - دسوق

6. are - Why - going - you - visit - to - him? (2023) الجيزة - الحوامدية

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. I was _____ (sail) when I found the message. (2023) القاهرة - المرج

2. Last week, Tom _____ (goes) to his grandparents' house.

3. What _____ (is) your favorite things? (2023) سوهاج - طهطا

4. He _____ (is) traveling to Sohag when he met his friends. (2024) قنا - قوص

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. how does tom feel at the end?

2. i'm writing a message to my friend

Review



Key vocabulary

by the sea	بجوار البحر
better idea	فكرة أفضل
sheep	أغنام
wolf	ذئب
villager	ساكن القرية
shepherd	راعى الغنم
the coast	الساحل
sailing	الابحار
excited	متحمس
long way	طريق طويل
reply	رد
How far?	كم يبعد؟

setting	وقت ومكان (القصة)
characters	الشخصيات
ending	النهاية
narrator	الراوى
moral	أخلاقى
grandparents	الاجداد
message	رسالة
glass bottle	زجاجة من الزجاج
trash	قمامة
score a goal	يحرز هدف
text message	رسالة نصية
a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق
space	الفضاء

Adjectives صفات

funny	مضحك
clever	ماهر / ذكى
different	مختلف
popular	شائع
great	عظيم

right	على حق
tired	متعب
excited	متحمس
bored	شاعر بالملل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
happen يحدث	happened
carry يحمل	carried
pass يمر	passed
surf يتزلج على الماء	surfed

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
know يعرف	knew
teach يدرس	taught
give يعطى	gave
let يدع	let
throw يرمى	threw

Help your child revise unit 9. ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة التاسعة.

arrive	يصل
reply	يرد
decide	يقرر

arrived
replied
decided

forget	ينسى
send	يرسل
feel	يشعر
write	يكتب
ride	يركب

forgot
sent
felt
wrote
rode

Language focus — قواعد لغوية

Past continuous — الماضى المستمر

1 Usage — الاستخدام

١- يعبر عن حدث كان مستمر فى وقت معين فى الماضي ويمكن أن يستخدم لسرد القصص.

٢- يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر.

2 Form — التكوين

◉ يتكون من:

I / He / She / It اسم مفرد **+ was**
They / We / You اسم جمع **+ were** **+ V + ing**

- She was reading a book at nine o'clock yesterday.
- They were walking their dog yesterday afternoon.

◉ يستخدم الماضى المستمر لربط حدثين فى الماضى، الحدث المستمر فى الماضى المستمر والحدث الثانى المفاجئ فى الماضى البسيط وذلك باستخدام أداة الربط(when).

3 When — أداة الربط

Past continuous + when + past simple

When + past simple + past continuous

- I was reading a book when my dad came home.
- When she woke up, I was reading a story.

4 Negative — النفي

I / He / She / It, اسم مفرد **+ wasn't**
We / You / They, اسم جمع **+ weren't** **+ V + ing**

- He wasn't riding a bike.
- They weren't doing their homework.

5 Question — السؤال

كلمة استفهام **+ was / were + subject + V + ing?**

- What was happening yesterday?
- Where were you yesterday morning?

مهارات الكتابة



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 1

Goha's story about the donkey

1 One day, a man went to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting was the countryside. The man and his son took turns to ride the donkey because it was a long journey. When the man rode the donkey, the people said he should let his son. When his son rode the donkey, people said he should let his father ride the donkey. The moral lesson is that you can't make everyone happy.

Lesson 3

2

New Message

To	hoda25@gmail.com Cc Bcc
From	laila15@yahoo.com
Subject	The boy who cried wolf

Dear Hoda.
How are you? I'd like to tell you about the story I read. Yesterday, I went to the library. I read a story about the boy who tells untrue stories. The boy told the villagers that a wolf came and wanted to eat the sheep. The villagers were angry and didn't believe the boy. There, one day a real wolf came and ate the sheep. The boy felt sorry. See you soon.
Yours,
Laila

Al-Azhar Test

"The boy who cried wolf"

3 Once there was a boy who worked as a shepherd. First, he shouted "There is a wolf". The villagers ran to save him. He didn't tell the truth and the real wolf came and killed his sheep. He believes that he should tell the truth.

Test Unit 9

Your favorite story

4 My favorite story was about the boy and his granddad who wrote a message in a glass bottle and threw it in the sea. After many years, his granddad found a reply to their message from a man in France. The boy decided to visit the man with his granddad. They went there by plane.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

happened - was - when - walking - weather

Amr : What were you doing yesterday afternoon?

Nabil : I was ❶ _____ on the beach.

Amr : What was the ❷ _____ like?

Nabil : It was very sunny.

Amr : Who ❸ _____ with you?

Nabil : My brother Adham.

Amr : What ❹ _____ after that?

Nabil : We were sitting on the beach ❺ _____ we saw my uncle's boat.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	feel	sent	found	saw	_____
2	what	where	whisper	when	_____
3	bored	bottle	sorry	excited	_____
4	then	first	next	moral	_____
5	woman	wolf	sheep	donkey	_____

3 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Last weekend, Samy _____ to his granddad.

a go b going c went d goes

2. The _____ is France in 1998.

a moral b character c setting d weather

3. He was listening to music _____ the man shouted.

a where b when c what d why

4. My friend's answers are _____.

a unhappy b incorrect c untidy d indoors

5. The _____ of the story is friends are important.

a moral b setting c narrator d character

6. Who _____ to your message?

a replies b travels c visits d comes

7. What _____ you doing yesterday morning?

a were b are c can d do

8. We were _____ English when the teacher came.

a studies b studied c studying d study

9. The villagers came to _____ the sheep from the wolf.

a save b waste c annoy d tell

10. She was sleeping when her friend _____ her.

a calling b calls c called d call

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Sending messages to friends is important in our life. But, one day Tom and his granddad sent a message to someone they did not know. That was a strange thing. They put a piece of paper in a glass bottle and threw it in the sea. A man in France found the message and replied to it. He wrote in his message about his favorite things. Tom was excited and he decided to travel to France by plane because the way was so long.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What was strange about Tom's message?

_____

2. Why did Tom travel to France by plane?

_____

3. Where did Tom put his message?

_____

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Tom threw the bottle in _____ .

a the park b France

c the sea d his granddad's house

5. Tom was _____ and decided to travel to France.

a bored b excited c angry d sorry

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. stories - It's - to - fun - tell.

2. you - want - to read - Do - a story?

3. is - Where - your - the setting - story - of?

4. make - laugh - Goha's - us - stories.

5. got - I - a message - Adel - from.

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The boy who cried wolf

Guiding words:

shepherd - wolf - villagers - sheep - believe

Test on Unit 9



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. We go to grandpa's farm on _____ holidays.

a winter b summer c spring d fall

2. When we are bored, we listen to _____ .

a songs b jokes c stories d films

3. There are a lot of stories in my grandpa's _____ .

a bedroom b living room c fields d balcony

4. I always _____ my grandpa's stories.

a forget b remember c buy d sell

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____ looks after the sheep. المنيا - العدوة (2024)

a doctor b teacher c shepherd d scientist

2. The _____ is the last part of a story. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)

a setting b character c narrator d ending

3. The _____ is the time and place where a story happens. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

a narrator b character c setting d moral

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

الإسكندرية - العجمي (2024)

اقرأ وأكمل:

moral - sorry - true - believe

Yesterday, I read the story of the boy and the wolf. I learned that I shouldn't tell untrue stories. People won't ❶ _____ me. When I'm in a problem, no one will help me. The ❷ _____ of the story is useful. The boy felt ❸ _____ at the end because the wolf ate his sheep.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Reading is very important in our life. We should read different kinds of books. We learn new things from reading. I like reading Goha's stories. I can learn the moral from reading **them**. They are funny and clever. Goha was also a great narrator. He is known by different names all over the world .But his stories have some differences in every country. They have the moral that Goha wants to teach us.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Goha was a great _____.

a traveler b teacher c swimmer d narrator

2. The underlined word "**them**" refers to Goha's _____.

a stories b countries c morals d names

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Are the stories the same all over the world?

_____

4. What do the stories have?

_____

5. What is Goha known by?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. afternoon - I - was - a match - yesterday - watching (2023) سوهاج - البلينا

2. the - Let's - resend - message. (2023) المنوفية - بركة السبع

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. _____ (Finally) boil the water. Next, put the tea bag.

2. It was _____ (rained) at nine yesterday. (2023) البحيرة - الدلنجات

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. which beach were you on

2. goha tells us funny stories

8 Write a paragraph of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your favorite story

Guiding questions

1- Who are the main characters in the story?

2- What's the moral of the story?

Review 3

Listening and Reading

Playing in the school yard

One day, Fares and Ramy were playing hopscotch in the school yard. They were drawing squares using different colored chalk when their friend Magdy came to talk to them.

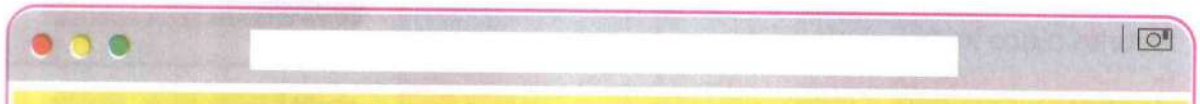
"What are you playing?" asked Magdy.

"It's hopscotch!" said Fares. "Do you want to play?"

"How do you play it?" asked Magdy.

"It's very easy," said Ramy. "First, you throw this rock onto the squares. Next, you see which square it is in. Then you hop to the end of the squares and back, but you have to jump over the square with your rock."

"Great! I'd love to have a go!" said Magdy.



Our museum visit

By Dalia

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then, we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too. My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

Listen and look at the pictures: استمع وانظر إلى الصور:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

What's your favorite story?

Reader A: Nadia went to the shops with her friends. They bought some clothes, some jewelry and some snacks. Then, they passed a toy shop. In the window of the toy shop was a cuddly toy. "Oh, look!" Said Nadia "Last time I came here I was with my sister. She loved this cuddly toy. I'm going to buy it for her!"



Reader B: Last summer, I moved to a big, busy city. I really missed the countryside. Then, one afternoon, I was walking through the middle of the city when I found a beautiful park. I spent the rest of the day there, among the trees and the flowers. I still miss the countryside sometimes, but I go to the park every day. It's my favorite place in the whole city!



Reader C: One day, a little monkey was feeling bored. He climbed to the top of the tallest tree and looked around. Nearby, some other little monkeys were playing a game. "Come and play with us!" they shouted. But the little monkey felt shy. Slowly, he went closer. And slowly, he felt braver. Before long, the little monkey felt happy. It was good to have fun!



Reader D: When I was a boy, I liked to go to the beach with my grandfather. We used his metal detector to find interesting things in the sand. One time, we found a small, metal box. "Treasure!" I said. My grandfather laughed. "Go on, then," he said. "What's inside?" I opened the box. Inside, there was a very special kind of treasure. It was a letter. A very old letter...



General Revision on Units 7, 8 & 9

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٧ - ٨ - ٩

Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

(Unit 7)

clay	صلصال
glass	زجاج
gold	ذهب
granite	حجر جرانيت
paper	ورق
papyrus	ورق البردى
baboon	قرد البابون
crocodile	تمساح
falcon	صقر
hippo	فرس النهر
ibis	طائر أبو منجل
monkey	قرد
snake	ثعبان

rat(s)	فأر كبير (فئران)
mouse (mice)	فأر (فئران)
artifacts	قطع اثرية
stone	حجر
metal	معدن
silver	فضة
durable	صلب / قوى التحمل
fascinating	مبهر / خلاب
weapon	سلاح
economy	اقتصاد
tools	أدوات / عدد
iron	حديد

(Unit 8)

action figure	مجسم شخصية كرتونية
board game	لعبة لوحية
cuddly toy	دمية العناق
doll's house	بيت الدمية
marbles	بلي
rollerblades	حذاء بعجلات
skateboard	لوح تزلج
train set	نموذج القطار اللعبة
hide and seek	لعبة الاستغماية
hopscotch	لعبة الحجلة

skipping	لعبة نط الحبل
button	زر
sail	شراع
stall	طاولة عرض البضائع (كشك)
trunk	زلومة / خرطوم الفيل
beat	يهزم
make up	يخترع / يؤلف
games console	وحدة تحكم الألعاب
have a go	يجرب
description	وصف

(Unit 9)

setting	وقت ومكان (القصة)
characters	الشخصيات
ending	النهاية
narrator	الراوى
by the sea	بجوار البحر
better idea	فكرة أفضل
sheep	أغنام
wolf	ذئب
moral	أخلاقى
grandparents	الاجداد
message	رسالة
glass bottle	زجاجة من الزجاج
trash	قمامة

score a goal	يحرز هدف
text message	رسالة نصية
a piece of paper	قطعة من الورق
space	الفضاء
villager	ساكن القرية
shepherd	راعى الغنم
the coast	الساحل
sailing	الابحار
excited	متحمس
long way	طريق طويل
reply	رد
How far?	كم يبعد؟

Adjectives صفات

(Unit 7)

free	حُر / خالى من	interesting	مثير للاهتمام
dangerous	خطير	popular / common	منتشر / شائع
difficult	صعب	important	مهم
harder	اكثر صلابة	rarer	اكثر ندرة
different	مختلف		

(Unit 9)

funny	مضحك	right	على حق
clever	ذكى / ماهر	tired	متعب
different	مختلف	excited	متحمس
popular	شائع	bored	شاعر بالملل
great	عظيم		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة				Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضٍ
(Unit 7)							
preserve	يحفظ/ يصون	preserved		know	يعرف	knew	
adore	يعشق	adored		am / is	يكون	was	
mummify	يحنط	mummified		are	يكونوا	were	
believe	يعتقد	believed		become	يصبح	became	
produce	ينتج	produced		teach	يعلم	taught	
trade	يتاجر	traded		grow up	يكبر	grew up	
hunt	يصيد	hunted		sell	يبيع	sold	
melt	يذوب/ ينصهر	melted		buy	يشترى	bought	
form	يشكل	formed					
(Unit 8)							
invent	يخترع	invented		beat	يهزم	beat	
move	يتحرك	moved		have a go	يجرب	had a go	
describe	يصف	described		make up	يخترع	made up	
share	يشارك	shared		seek	يبحث	sought	
solve	يحل	solved		hide	يختفي	hid	
				show	يعرض	showed	
(Unit 9)							
happen	يحدث	happened		give	يعطى	gave	
surf	يتزلج على الماء	surfed		let	يدع	let	
reply	يرد	replied		throw	يرمى	threw	
decide	يقرر	decided		forget	ينسى	forgot	
				send	يرسل	sent	

Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

(Unit 7)

1 The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

⊙ يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- They loved pets.

Subject (فاعل) + **verb** (فعل في التصريف الثاني) + باقي الجملة

- I grew up in Cairo.

◉ تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولا: الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ d, ed ,ied:

- love → love(d) dance → dance(d)
- need → needed study → studied - stop → stopped

ثانيا: الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها ed وتحفظ كما هي:

- keep → kept become → became

Negative النفي

باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل + didn't + فاعل Subject

- Mice didn't eat grains.

Question السؤال

(كلمة استفهام) + Did + subject فاعل + inf مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة؟

- Did you visit the Pyramids?

◉ وتكون الإجابة اما بـ Yes في حالة الإثبات أو بـ No في حالة النفي:

- Yes, I did. / - No, I didn't.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

◉ Verb to be in the past فعل يكون فى الماضى

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was
We/ You / They / اسم جمع	were

- It was hot yesterday.
- Keeping crocodiles were dangerous in Ancient Egypt.

◉ لا نستخدم did أو didn't في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون verb to be في زمن الماضي البسيط ولكن نضع (not) بعد (was / were):

- Adam wasn't at school yesterday. - They were happy last week.

(Unit 8)

2 Intensifiers المعززات اللفظية

◉ نستخدم المعززات اللفظية لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

◉ يمكننا استخدام (really , very , أو so) لتعزيز الصفة:

- I was really / very good at hiding! - Some skipping games are so difficult.

◉ يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (really) لتقوية (لتعزيز معنى) الفعل:

- I really liked playing hopscotch. - I really feel happy when I am with you.

◉ يمكننا أن نستخدم (at all) لتعزيز معنى الجمل المنفية :

- He didn't like skipping at all! - Sandy isn't beautiful at all.

◉ يمكننا أيضًا استخدام (quite) لجعل معنى الصفة أقل قوة :

- I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

➢ **Some verbs are followed by verb + -ing, for example:**

◉ بعض الأفعال يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل مضافاً اليه ing مثل :

enjoy	يستمتع بـ	stop	يتوقف	continue	يستكمل	finish	ينهي
hate	يكره	imagine	يتخيل	like	يحب	prefer	يفضل
love	يحب						

- I enjoy looking at the market stalls.

(Unit 9)

3 Past continuous الماضى المستمر

١ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمر فى وقت معين فى الماضي ويمكن أن يستخدم لسرد القصص.

٢ - يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرا فى الماضى عندما قطعه حدث آخر.

◉ يتكون من :

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was
They / We / You / اسم جمع + were } **+ V + ing**

- She was reading a book at nine o'clock yesterday.

◉ يستخدم الماضى المستمر لربط حدثين فى الماضى، الحدث المستمر فى الماضى المستمر والحدث الثانى المفاجئ فى الماضى البسيط وذلك باستخدام أداة الربط (when).

Past continuous + when + past simple

When + past simple + past continuous

- I was reading a book when my dad came home.
- When she woke up I was reading a story.

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + wasn't
We / You / They / اسم جمع + weren't } **+ V + ing**

- He wasn't riding a bike.

كلمة استفهام + was / were } **+ subject + V + ing?**

- What was happening yesterday?

Test on Units (7 - 8 & 9)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: البحر الأحمر - سفاجا (2023)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Ancient Egyptians kept cats as _____.

a humans b pests c pets d insects

2. Cats kept the houses free from _____.

a lions b mice c dogs d snakes

3. Ancient Egyptians mummified cats and kept them in _____.

a rooms b pyramids c tombs d towers

4. Ancient Egyptians _____ cats because they believed in the afterlife.

a mummified b bathed c fed d killed

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm very good at ..... up stories. الأقصر - إسنا (2023)

a making b practicing c skipping d riding

2. ..... was common metal in Ancient Egypt. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)

a Wood b Iron c Plastic d Paper

3. Do you like playing with a train ..... ? بني سويف - بني سويف (2023)

a seek b set c sick d sit

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الغربية - السنطة (2023)

skateboard - beard - marbles - board

I remember my box of old toys when I was a child. I still put it under my bed. I always broke my toys, but my sister kept her toys new. My toys were ❶ _____ games, action figures and ❷ _____. I didn't play with cuddly dolls, but my sister had a doll's house. There was also a train set. I liked going outside in the park to ride my ❸ _____.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: بنى سويف - بنى سويف (2024)

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then, we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too. My favorite was a small snake made by metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. **They** believed that cats kept them safe.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. My brother liked a gold ---------- with blue glass eyes.

   a parrot b eagle c falcon d snake

2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ---------- .

   a statues b cats c Ancient Egyptians d animals

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did they see in the museum?

   ---

4. When did they go to the museum?

   ---

4. Summarize the passage in two sentences.

   ---

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. game - your - **What** - favorite - is? سوهاج - طهطا (2023)

   ---

2. popular - stories - very - **Goha's** - are. المنوفية - قويسنا (2024)

   ---

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. Hoda didn't _____ **(broke)** her toys. المنوفية - شبين الكوم (2023)

2. Samy was _____ **(shop)** yesterday morning. البحيرة - دمنهور (2023)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i played marbles with my brother

_____

2. what's inside the bottle

_____

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Papyrus in Ancient Egypt

Guiding questions

1- What's the papyrus?

2- Why did Ancient Egyptians need papyrus?

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Theme 4

Unit 10

Myself and others

Free as a bird

طليق (حُر) كالطائر



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs.
   يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجرى بحث ويكتب عن أمثال عن طائر أو حيوان.
2. Listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt.
   يستمع الطالب ويفهم عرض تقديمي عن السياحة البيئية في مصر.
3. Read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife.
   يقرأ الطالب ويتعلم عن السياحة البيئية والحياة البرية.
4. Use must / mustn't to talk about something we have to do.
   يستخدم الطالب must / mustn't ليتحدث عن شيء يجب أن نفعله.
5. Use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.
   يستخدم الطالب الحالة الشرطية الأولى ليتحدث عن اشياء من المحتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.
6. Read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt.
   يقرأ الطالب اعلانات لاجازات السياحة البيئية في مصر.
7. Read and learn about bird migration.
   يقرأ الطالب ويتعلم عن هجرة الطيور.
8. Say words with two or three syllables.
   يقول الطالب كلمات مكونه من مقطعين صوتيين أو ثلاثة.
9. Read and write a blog about animal habitats.
   يقرأ الطالب ويكتب مدونة الكترونية عن بيئات الحيوانات.
10. Create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta.
    ينشئ الطالب كتيب معلومات عن دلتا نهر النيل.

Lesson 1 ★ Birds of a feather

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

Adjectives صفات

similar	مشابه / متشابه
successful	ناجح
real	حقيقي / واقعي
sensible	عاقل / حكيم / منطقي
strange	غريب
careful	حريص

Other words كلمات أخرى

ostrich	نعامة
hummingbird	طائر طنان
description	وصف
early	باكرا
exact	دقيق
meaning	معنى
scientific fact	حقيقة علمية
generally	عموما
feathers	ريش
worm	دودة
proverb	مثل / قول مأثور
scary	مخيف
well-known	معروف - مشهور
plan	خطة
group	مجموعة
the same	نفس الشيء
fine	جميل - جذاب
flock together	يطيرون سويا
nest	عش
eagle	نسر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
hatch يفقس	hatched
try يحاول	tried
dare يجرؤ	dared
count يعد	counted
mention يذكر - يشير الى	mentioned
flock يتجمع / يحتشد	flocked
succeed ينجح	succeeded

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
tell يخبر	told
fly يطير	flew
mean يعنى	meant
build يبني	built
think يعتقد / يفكر	thought
catch يصطاد	caught
fall يسقط	fell

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

get the idea	يفهم - يدرك الفكرة	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	make plans	يخطط
try hard	يبذل قصارى جهده	the first to	أول من يفعل
How about + (v.ing \ n)?	ماذا عن؟	look the same	تبدو متشابهه

Definitions تعريفات

proverb مثل	- a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. - has another meaning as well as its exact meaning.
sensible معقول/حكيم	if something is sensible, it is a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.
successful ناجح	someone who tries to do something, and does it.
careful حريص	a person who tries hard not to make mistakes.
similar متشابه	two things that might look the same or do the same things.
real حقيقى	something that happens and is true.

Proverbs أمثال

Don't count your chickens before they hatch.

لا تعول على شيء جيد قبل حدوثه. (لا تفرح بالشيء قبل اكتماله)

The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly.

يفوز باللذة كل مغامر.

Birds of a feather flock together.

الطيور على أشكالها تقع.

It is not only fine feathers which make fine birds.

لا تحكم على الكتاب من غلافه.

The early bird catches the worm.

البركة فى البكور.

Even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun.

العين لا تعلو على الحاجب.

Singing birds don't build nests.

الأفعال أعلى صوتًا من الأقوال.

Study the following

1. **Proverbs have more than one meaning.**

- الامثال لها اكثر من معنى.

2. **To be successful, you need to be the first to do something.**

- لكي تكون ناجحًا، عليك أن تكون أول من يفعل شيئًا ما.

3. **Similar people like doing the same things.**

- الاشخاص المتشابهون يحبون فعل نفس الأشياء.

4. **You don't make too many plans before something is real.**

- لا تحتاج أن تضع خطط كثيرة جدا قبل أن تتأكد من حقيقة الشيء.

5. **You are getting the idea!**

- لقد فهمت الفكرة.

6. **A successful person tries hard not to make mistakes.**

- يفعل الشخص الناجح ما في وسعه لكي لا يرتكب أخطاء.

1 Read the proverb. Then choose the correct answer a, b, or c:

اقرأ المثل ثم اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

Proverb: The early bird catches the worm.

1. A proverb is

a. a description of an animal. ☐

b. a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. ☐

c. a scientific fact. ☐

2. A proverb

a. means exactly what it says. ☐

b. has another meaning as well as its exact meaning. ☐

2 **Listen and read the dialog. Who suggests meanings for the proverbs: Malak, Injy, or both?** استمع واقرأ المحادثة. من يقترح معاني للأمثال: ملك ام انجي ام كلتاهما؟

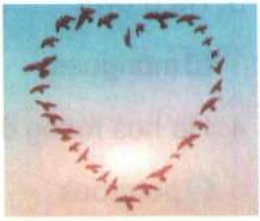
Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Malak: Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

Injy : Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be **successful**, you need to be the first to do something.



Malak: How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".

Injy : If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have **similar** feathers.

Malak: You mean they all look the same?

Injy : Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.



Malak: Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

Injy : Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being **careful** before you know something will happen.

Malak: So you don't make too many plans before something is **real**. That's **sensible**. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?



Injy : Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. It can be about 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the bee hummingbird. It is about 5.5 cm long.

أكبر طائر في العالم هو النعام. يمكن أن يصل طوله حوالي ٢١٠ سم. يمكنه الركض بسرعة ولكنه لا يستطيع الطيران. أصغر الطيور هو طائر النحل الطنان حيث يبلغ طوله حوالي ٥.٥ سم.





Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: المنوفية - الباجور (2023)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Ahmed has a _____ in Aswan.

a house b farm c school d hospital

2. The farm is _____.

a long b small c new d big

3. He grows _____ there.

a mangoes b figs c onions d guavas

4. He has many different types of _____.

a potatoes b trees c mangoes d animals

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The early bird _____ the worm. الأقصر - الأقصر (2024)

a tries b thinks c grows d catches

2. Don't count your chickens before they _____. كفر الشيخ - الحامول (2023)

a hatch b match c catch d flock

3. Birds of a feather _____ together. المنوفية - شبين الكوم (2024)

a plant b flock c hatch d kill

4. Singing birds don't build _____. الإسكندرية - العجمي (2023)

a towers b nests c vests d tents

5. The birds who dares to fall is the bird who learns to _____. البحر الأحمر - الغردقة (2024)

a swim b fly c eat d play

6. If something is _____, it happens and is true. الغربية - بسيون (2023)

a real b successful c funny d careful

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

7. Birds live in _____. الدقهلية - ميت غمر (2023)

a castles b schools c nests d streets

8. Even an eagle will not fly higher than the _____. الغربية - شرق طنطا (2023)

a moon b star c sun d sky

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الغربية - سمنود (2023)

long - hummingbird - leaves - bird

The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. Ostriches can reach speeds of over 70km per hour. It eats roots, ① _____, flowers and seeds. It can be about 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the bee ② _____. It is very small bird. It is about 5.5 cm ③ _____.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. the first - need - to do - **You** - something - to be. المنوفية - السادات (2023)

_____

2. chickens - **Don't** - they - your - before - hatch - count. الأقصر - الأقصر (2023)

_____

3. hard - person - mistakes - **A careful** - not to - tries - make. القليوبية - كفر شكر (2023)

_____

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. you re getting that great idea.

_____

2. how about this one

_____

Lesson 2 Part 1 ★ Eco-tourism in Egypt

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

sustainable	مستدام – صديق للبيئة
simple	بسيط
accommodation	اقامة

ideal	مثالي – نموذجي
respect	يحترم

Other words كلمات أخرى

Eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
tourist	سائح
tour	جولة سياحية
country	دولة
historical places	أماكن تاريخية
store	متجر
migrating birds	طيور مهاجرة
desert safari	رحلة سفاري صحراوية
vacation	عطلة – اجازة
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوه
North Africa	شمال افريقيا

Asia	قارة آسيا
habitat	موطن – مسكن
perfect	مثالي – كامل – رائع
shopping	التسوق
environment	بيئة
nature	الطبيعة
pollution	تلوث
species	فصائل – أنواع
distance	مسافة
journey	رحلة (طويلة)
hiking	جولات التنزه (على الاقدام)

Adjectives صفات

popular	شعبي – مشهور
traditional	تقليدي
fantastic	رائع

certain	معين – محدد
safe	آمن
close to	قريب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ (أفعال منتظمة)
visit	يزور	visited
sail	يبحر	sailed
damage	يدمر	damaged
design	يصمم	designed
protect	يحمي	protected
respect	يحترم	respected
migrate	يهاجر	migrated

Irregular

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ (أفعال غير منتظمة)
become	يصبح	became
fly	يطير	flew
take	يلتقط - يأخذ	took
hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

go snorkeling	يذهب للغوص بأنبوب التنفس
give information about	يعطي معلومات عن
cause lots of pollution	يسبب كثيرا من التلوث
from all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
take lots of photographs	يلتقط كثير من الصور
go bird watching	يذهب لمشاهدة الطيور

Definitions تعريفات

sustainable صديق للبيئة — do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment

simple accommodation اقامة بسيطة — living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more

accommodation إقامة — somewhere you stay

ideal مثالى — perfect or excellent

respect يحترم — like something and want to look after it

Study the following

1. There are many historical places to visit.
- يوجد أماكن تاريخية عديدة لنزورها.

2. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea.
- يستطيع الناس أن يذهبوا للسباحة بأنبوب التنفس في البحر الأحمر.

3. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
- السياحة البيئية هي طريقة للسفر لا تضر البيئة.

4. Eco-tourism is more sustainable than traditional tourism.
- السياحة البيئية صديقة للبيئة اكثر من السياحة التقليدية.

5. Eco-tourism is designed to protect nature.
- السياحة البيئية صممت لتحمي البيئة.

6. They mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.
- لا يجب عليهم أن يسافروا بالطرق التي تسبب كثير من التلوث.

7. Many people are starting to visit Egypt for birds and wildlife watching.
- بدأ عديد من الناس في زيارة مصر لمشاهدات الطيور والحياة البرية.

8. Birds must fly to different countries at certain times of year.
- يجب أن تطير الطيور إلى دول مختلفة في أوقات معينة من العام.

9. There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt.
- يوجد أكثر من ٤٥٠ فصيلة من الطيور في مصر.

10. Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds.
- واحة سيوة هي مكان رائع لترى عديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة.

11. The most important thing is not to hurt nature.
- الشيء الأكثر أهمية هو ألا تضر البيئة.

1 A guidebook gives tourists information about a place. Listen to and read this guidebook. What is eco-tourism?

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important - but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.

مصر بلد رائع. هناك العديد من الأماكن التاريخية لزرياتها، بالاضافة الى المتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف. يمكن للناس أن يذهبوا للسباحة بانبوب التنفس في البحر الأحمر، أو يذهبوا في رحلة سفاري صحراوية، او يتسلقوا الجبال، أو يبحروا في النيل. لذا فإن السياحة مهمة - لكن السياحة البيئية أصبحت تحظى بشعبية كبيرة أيضًا.

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

السياحة البيئية هي وسيلة سفر لا تضر بالبيئة. إنها صديقة للبيئة أكثر من السياحة التقليدية، وهي مصممة لحماية الطبيعة. يقيم الناس في أماكن إقامة بسيطة ليست مثل الفنادق الكبيرة ويجب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate - they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

بدأ الكثير من الناس بزيارة مصر لمشاهدة الطيور والحياة البرية. هناك الكثير من الطيور الرائعة لتراها هنا. تهاجر أنواع كثيرة من الطيور، ويجب عليها الطيران إلى دول مختلفة في أوقات معينة من العام، للعثور على الطعام، أو بناء أعشاش، أو التمتع بطقس أكثر دفئًا. في كثير من الأحيان يجب أن تطير الطيور لفترة طويلة جدًا لمسافات طويلة، وكثير من رحلاتهم تمر فوق مصر، لأنها في شمال أفريقيا وقريبة من آسيا وأوروبا.



There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

هناك أكثر من ٤٥٠ نوعًا من الطيور في مصر، ويأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم لقضاء العطلات لرؤيتهم. على سبيل المثال، واحة سيوة هي مكان رائع لرؤية العديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة. إنها موطن مهم ويجب على الناس حمايته.

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs! Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

الأشخاص الذين يذهبون لمشاهدة الطيور في مصر سيكون لديهم الكثير لرؤيته. ولا يجب أن يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأنهم قد يطيرون بعيدًا، لكن يمكنهم المشاهدة من مسافة آمنة والتقاط الكثير من الصور! تعتبر مشاهدة الحياة البرية شيء رائع للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة والسياحة البيئية هي وسيلة جيدة للناس لفعل ذلك.

Lesson 2 Part 2 Eco-tourism in Egypt Language Focus

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

ads	إعلانات
own	خاص
trip	رحلة (قصيرة)
chance	فرصة
bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
sunset	غروب الشمس
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية

protected area	منطقة محمية
tent	خيمة
lizard	سحلية
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء
definitely	بالتأكيد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after
camp	يعسكر	camped
hope	يأمل	hoped
scare	يخيف	scared

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
bring	يحضر	brought
go down	تغرب	went down
set off	ينطلق	set off
leave	يترك	left
get to	يصل	got to
spend	يقضى	spent

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

have the chance	لديه الفرصة
take photos underground	يلتقط صور تحت الارض
travel on a river	يسافر عبر النهر
cook outdoors	يطهو بالخارج
go on a tour	يذهب فى جولة
go on a desert safari	يذهب في رحلات السفاري الصحراوية

Language focus

قواعد لغوية

must \ mustn't

➢ We use must when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.

◉ نستخدم must عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما يجب أن نفعله أو مهم أن نفعله

➢ We use mustn't (must not) when we are not allowed to do something.

◉ نستخدم mustn't عندما لا يكون مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

- We must bring a tent.
- We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

◉ لاحظ يأتى بعد must / mustn't الفعل فى المصدر.

فاعل + must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

- You mustn't hurt birds.

◉ لا تأتى to بعد must / mustn't .

Question

كلمة استفهام + must + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- What must we do to protect the environment?

◉ عند السؤال بـ «هل؟» نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Must + فاعل + مصدر الفعل + تكملة الجملة?

- Must they respect nature? - Yes, they must.
- Must she wear a dress? - No, she mustn't.

Practice

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1- They _____ **(mustn't)** study their lessons hard.
2- They _____ **(must)** play in streets. It is not safe.
3- We must _____ **(visiting)** my uncle tomorrow.
4- We mustn't _____ **(smoked)** in hospitals.
5- Must he practice every day? - Yes, he _____ **(mustn't)**.
6- Must you _____ **(sleeping)** early?
7- Where must he _____ **(goes)** diving?
8- Why _____ **(they must)** study hard?

2 Complete the sentences with must or mustn't:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام must / mustn't :

1. You _____ respect nature.
2. You _____ scare birds or animals.
3. You _____ leave trash in the desert.
4. You _____ be careful in the natural environment.
5. You _____ walk to school today because there are no buses.
6. You _____ walk in the desert when it's hot.

3 Read the ads for vacations in Egypt. Match the titles to each ad 1– 4:

a 

Snorkel safari

b 

Desert sunsets

c 

On the river

d 

Birds at sea

1 _____

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!.

2 _____

Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

3 _____

Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

4 _____

Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: السويس - الأربعين (2024)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Egypt is an amazing _____

a house b city c country d town

2. There are many _____ places to visit.

a historical b small c tourism d busy

3. People can go _____ in the Red Sea.

a on vacations b diving c snorkeling d swimming

4. Tourism is _____ for Egypt.

a busy b important c dirty d pollution

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourism is more _____ than traditional tourism.

a designed b polluted c respect d sustainable

2. Wildlife watching is ideal for people who _____ nature. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

a hate b damage c respect d destroy

3. I can go swimming and bird _____. الجيزة - الجوامدية (2024)

a snorkeling b watching c sleeping d camping

4. The scuba divers explored the _____

a coral reefs b tents c mountains d desert

5. Eco-tourism is designed to _____ nature. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

a destroy b play c protect d hurt

6. Cars and factories can _____ lots of pollution. الغربية - غرب طنطا (2024)

a cause b protect c have d kill

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الجيزة - الصف (2023)

habitat - Oasis - village - migrating

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa ① _____ is a fantastic place to see many ② _____ water birds. It is an important ③ _____ and people must protect it.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. the Red - go - **People** - snorkeling - in - can - Sea. الجيزة - أوسيم (2024)

2. is - to - designed - protect - **Eco-tourism** - nature. الشرقية - ديرب نجم (2023)

3. loudly - in the - **Omar** - speak - library - mustn't. بورسعيد - بورسعيد (2024)

4. important - respect - **It's** - to - nature.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You must _____ **(being)** careful at school. الجيزة - منشاة القناطر (2023)
2. She _____ **(mustn't)** help her brother with his homework.
3. _____ **(must you)** respect nature. الغربية - كفر الزيات (2023)
4. You _____ **(must)** scare birds or animals.
5. You _____ **(must)** leave trash in the desert.
6. You must _____ **(are)** careful in the natural environment. أسوان - إدفو (2023)
7. You _____ **(mustn't)** walk to school today because there are no buses.
8. You mustn't _____ **(walked)** in the desert when it's hot.
9. You _____ **(must not)** study birds quietly from a safe place.

10. What _____ **(we must)** do when it is hot? المنوفية - تلا (2023)

11. Children _____ **(mustn't)** respect their parents. الأقصر - إسنا (2023)

12. Parents must _____ **(took)** care of their children.

13. You _____ **(must)** use your mobile phone in the library.

14. You must _____ **(been)** careful when you drive a car.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. why mustn't they play here

2. where can we go snorkeling

7 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Eco-tourism

Guiding words

sustainable - accommodation

Lesson 3 Part 1 ★ THE BENEFITS OF ECO-TOURISM

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
successful	ناجح
local people	سكان محليون
sightseeing	المعالم السياحية

campsite	معسكر تخييم
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي
traditional vacation	عطلة تقليدية

Other words كلمات أخرى

job	وظيفة
tonight	الليلة
exam	امتحان
term	فصل دراسي
keen to	حريص على
do sports	يمارس رياضة
outdoor	في الخارج
traffic	مرور
accommodation	أماكن إقامة
idea	فكرة

cycling	ركوب دراجات
a bit boring	ممل قليلا
fun	ممتع – متعة
recycle	يعيد تدوير
relaxing	مسترخي – مستريح
view	منظر طبيعي
local communities	مجتمعات محلية
continent	قارة
benefit	فائدة
deadline	الموعد النهائي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
damage يتلف / يدمر	damaged
create يخلق / ينشيء	created
miss يفوته	missed
provide يمد / يزود	provided
support يساند / يدعم	supported
explore يستكشف	explored

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
learn يتعلم	learned / learnt
catch يلحق بـ	caught
find out يعرف	found out
get up ينهض	got up
mean يعني	meant

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

take care of	يعتني بـ
create jobs for	يخلق فرص عمل لـ
go to bed	يذهب للنوم
for two hours	لمدة ساعتين
cause less damage	يسبب ضرر أقل
whenever possible	متى أمكن
sail on the Nile	يبحر في النيل

Study the following

1. **My presentation today is about eco-tourism.**
- يدور العرض التقديمى اليوم حول السياحة البيئية.
2. **Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it.**
- مصر بلد جميل للغاية لذلك يجب أن نعتنى بها.
3. **Lots of people want to visit Egypt.**
- يريد الكثير من الناس زيارة مصر.
4. **It is good if we have lots of visitors.**
- من الجيد أن يكون لدينا عدد كبير من الزوار.
5. **Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment.**
- السياحة البيئية جيدة لأن الناس يمكنهم زيارة البيئة والاستمتاع بها.
6. **If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment.**
- إذا اهتم السائحون بالأماكن التى يزورونها، فإنهم سيتسببون فى ضرر أقل للبيئة.
7. **If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.**
- إذا نجحت السياحة البيئية، فإنها ستخلق فرص عمل جديدة للسكان المحليين.

1 Listen to Lina's presentation about eco-tourism and read her notes. Do they include any of your own ideas?

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

My presentation(1) today is about eco- tourism(2) and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism(3) can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems(4). Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment but not in a way that damages(5) the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea.

Arabic Meaning

١- عرض تقديمى
٢- السياحة البيئية
٣- السياحة
٤- مشكلات
٥- يتلف

٦- صديق للبيئة

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly(6) accommodation,there won't be so many big hotels. If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

Thank you for listening. Are there any questions?

Language focus — قواعد لغوية

The first conditional (IF)

➢ We use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

◉ نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن أشياء محتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

Form التكوين

If + فاعل + present simple, + فاعل + will + مصدر الفعل

◉ تذكر يتكون المضارع البسيط من present simple:

(He / She / It + verb + s /es / ies)
(We / You / They + inf.)

- If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.
- If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.

◉ إذا جاءت (If) أول الجملة نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين وإذا جاءت فى المنتصف لا نضع فاصلة.

- They will want to protect it if they learn more about the environment.

◉ لاحظ: عند النفي نستخدم التالي:

If + { فاعل مفرد + doesn't + مصدر الفعل / فاعل جمع + don't + مصدر الفعل } + فاعل + won't + مصدر الفعل.

- If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.
- If we don't get up early, we won't catch the bus.

◉ لاحظ يمكن ان يكون النفى فى احدى الجمل:

- If you don't sleep early, you will be late.

◉ لاحظ: will = 'll , will not = won't

Practice

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. If I _____ **(went)** out tonight, I will go to the cinema.
2. If my mother _____ **(isn't)** get up early, she will not catch the train.
3. If they don't study hard, they _____ **(will)** pass the test.
4. We _____ **(will)** get lost if we use the town map.
5. She will be very sad if you _____ **(not give)** her some flowers.
6. If you have a cold, you will _____ **(stayed)** in bed.
7. She won't play with us if she _____ **(isn't coming)** early.

2 Complete the sentences:

1. If I _____ **(have)** an important exam next term, I _____ **(study)** for it.
2. If you _____ **(go)** to bed late tonight, you _____ **(not/ get up)** early tomorrow.
3. If Omar _____ **(play)** football for two hours, he _____ **(be)** tired!
4. If she _____ **(feel)** thirsty, she _____ **(drink)** some water.
5. If we _____ **(not / work)** together, we _____ **(miss)** the deadline!

How much of an eco-tourist are you?

Score 1 – 6 points: You prefer traditional vacations, but you can still be an eco-tourist by helping the environment while you're away. For example, try to walk or travel by bus and train, and recycle your trash whenever possible.

Score 7 – 12 points: You want to take care of the environment and support local communities, so you are keen to learn more about eco-tourism. Next time you go on vacation, try out some eco-tourist activities like wildlife watching, cycling, or snorkeling.

Score 13 – 18 points:

You're a great eco-tourist! You like to explore new ways of traveling and do activities that don't damage the environment. Good for you!

Lesson 3 Part 2 ★ Science - Bird Migration Pronunciation

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



swift
طائر السمامة



kingfisher
طائر الرفراف (صائد السمك)



pelican
بجعة



falcon
صقر



flamingo
طائر الفلامنجو (البشروس)



eagle
نسر / عقاب

oases	واحات
Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
distances	مسافات
scientists	علماء
a long time	وقت طويل
flocks	مجموعات / أسراب

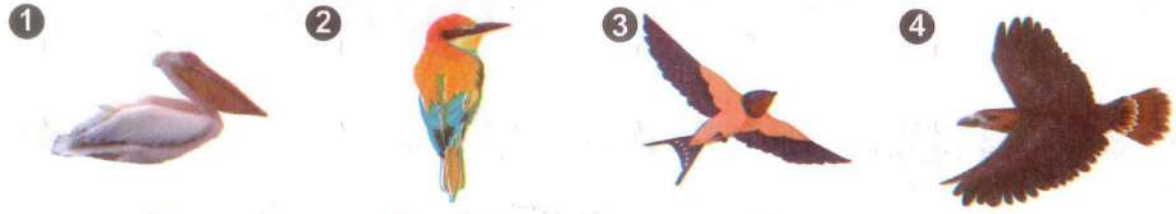
across	عبر
Europe	اوروبا
European countries	دولة أوربية
Northern	شمالى
warmer places	اماكن أكثر دفئًا
water birds	طيور مائية
Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط

Study the following

1. **Many birds migrate to and from Egypt.**
   - تهاجر العديد من الطيور الى ومن مصر.
2. **You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water.**
   - يمكنك كثيرا أن ترى أسراب ضخمة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه.
3. **Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.**
   - بحيرة قارون فى الفيوم هي مكان جيد لترى طيور الفلامنجو.
4. **How do these birds know where to go?**
   - كيف تعرف هذه الطيور أين تذهب؟

3 Listen, point, and say:

استمع، اشر وقل:



pelican kingfisher swift eagle

4 Listen and read. What do migrating birds eat?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا تأكل الطيور المهاجرة؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

A long journey رحلة طويلة

- Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

- تهاجر العديد من الطيور الى ومن مصر وعبرها، بسبب موقعها في العالم. شمال أفريقيا أكثر سخونة من أوروبا، لذلك في فصل الشتاء، تغادر العديد من الطيور دول شمال أوروبا وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثر دفئا. وهذا يعني أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور وصقور الباز وطيور السمامة

- Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

- تهاجر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. يمكنك في كثير من الأحيان رؤية أسراب كبيرة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه، على طول سواحل البحر الأحمر والبحر الأبيض المتوسط، وكذلك على نهر النيل. غالبًا ما تأكل هذه الطيور الأسماك أو النباتات التي تعيش في الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات والبحار. تعد بحيرة قارون بالفيوم مكانًا جيدًا لمشاهدة طيور الفلامنجو.

- Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

- تطير بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة بعد سنة. حتى الطيور الصغيرة التي تهاجر لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذي تحتاج إليه. كيف تعرف هذه الطيور إلى أين تذهب؟ قد يستدلون بالشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التي يمكنهم رؤيتها في الطريق. لقد قضى العلماء وقتًا طويلاً يحاولون معرفة كيفية قيامهم بذلك!!

Pronunciation

- تتكون الكلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية من مقاطع صوتية حيث تحتوى كل كلمة على مقطع صوتى متحرك على الاقل.
- إذا جاءت الاصوات المتحركة معا دون فاصل تعتبر مقطع صوتى واحد meat - bread .
- إذا انتهت الكلمة بحرف (e) غير منطوق لا يعتبر مقطع صوتى إلا اذا كان قبله حرف (l) apple
- حرف (y) يعد من المقاطع الصوتية city
- عند نطق الكلمة يشدد مقطع من المقاطع الصوتية حيث ينطق بصوت اوضح واعلى من الباقى .
- الكلمات المكونة من مقطعيين صوتيين يتم فى الغالب تشديد المقطع الاول.
- الكلمات المكونة من ثلاثة مقاطع صوتية يتم تشديد المقطع الأول أو الثانى.

1 Look and listen. Then listen again and repeat. How many syllables do the words in bold have?

انظر واستمع. كم عدد المقاطع للكلمات المكتوبة بخط سميك؟

1 

Eagles migrate to other continents.

2 

The kingfisher lives near rivers.

2 Read and say the words. Clap the syllables:

اقرأ الكلمات. صفق عدد المقاطع الصوتية:

pelican weather flamingo successful falcon careful

3 Write the words in the correct column:

اكتب الكلمة فى العمود الخاصة بعدد المقاطع الخاص بها:

Two syllables	Three syllables

Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourism is very important for Egypt. It has many _____.

a benefits b friends c markets d views

2. If they stay in _____ accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.

a dirty b expensive c eco-friendly d harmful

3. If people learn more about the environment, they will want to _____ it. القاهرة - الزاوية الحمراء (2023)

a play b hurt c protect d eat

4. Many birds _____ to and from Egypt. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2023)

a eat b drink c sleep d migrate

5. You can see large _____ of birds near the water. الإسماعيلية - القصاصين (2023)

a blocks b flocks c stars d boxes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: البحيرة - الدلنجات (2023)

provides - sightseeing - fun - polluted

When I want to go on vacation, I like to travel by boat. I like to stay in a small, outdoor hotel room. It is very quiet. I like to go (1) _____, do some sports and activities. I usually see many eco-tourists there. I think eco-tourism is interesting and (2) _____ I think it's important that tourism (3) _____ jobs for local people.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Birds are some of the most amazing creatures on Earth! Look up and there they might be, flying in the sky with colorful feathers and nice songs. Did you know they're the only animals with feathers, which help them fly (although some like penguins and ostriches can't quite manage it!)? They have different beaks for different foods, sharp beaks for catching insects and flat beaks for searching for seeds.

Birds come in all shapes and sizes, from the tiny hummingbird smaller than your thumb to the giant ostrich taller than a human! They build nests in trees, cliffs, or even the ground.

Unit 10 Free as a bird

Birds are always busy, flying around, searching for food, singing sweet songs, and taking care of their families. They're an important part of our world, helping to pollinate تلقيح plants, spread seeds, and even control insect populations. So next time you see a bird, take a moment to thank these feathered friends and all the wonder they bring!.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ help birds to fly.

a Beaks b Heads c Feathers d Noses

2. Birds use their _____ to catch insects.

a wings b feathers c tails d beaks

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why are birds important?

_____

4. Where do the birds build nests?

_____

5. Summarize the passage in one sentence.

_____

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. and - Egypt - birds - to - **Many** - from - migrate. المنوفية - شبين الكوم (2024)

_____

2. do - where - birds - to go - know - **How** ?

_____

3. to see - is a good - **Lake Qarun** - place - flamingos. الإسكندرية - العجمي (2024)

_____

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If I _____ **(missed)** the train, I'll take the next one. الجيزة - الحوامدية (2024)
2. She _____ **(has)** to do this exam again if she passes it.
3. If it _____ **(rain)**, I won't go to the park. القليوبية - طوخ (2024)

4. If we _____ **(not study)** hard, we won't pass the exams. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)

5. If I _____ **(will study)** today, I'll go to the party tonight.

6. If I _____ **(had)** enough money, I'll buy some new shoes.

7. She _____ **(be)** late if the train is delayed. القاهرة - السيدة زينب (2023)

8. She'll _____ **(missed)** the bus if she doesn't leave soon.

9. If I see her, I _____ **(tell)** her. الأقصر - إسنا (2024)

10. If she _____ **(have)** a lot of money, she will buy a car. سوهاج - جرجا (2024)

11. If you go to bed late tonight, you _____ **(will)** get up early tomorrow. الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر (2024)

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. Why is tourism important in egypt

2. you can see large flocks of birds

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Bird migration

Guiding phrases

migrate to other countries - large flocks of birds

Lessons 4&5 ★ WRITING & PROJECT

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

National Park	محمية وطنية
scuba dive	الغوص بأنبوب
wildlife watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية

the Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
snorkel	يسبح بأنبوب التنفس
shark	سمكة قرش

Vocabulary

habitat	موطن
lives	حيوات
blog	مدونة الكترونية
part of	جزء من
different	مختلف
everybody	كل شخص
holiday	اجازة
stick to	يلصق في
litter	قمامة
climate change	تغير المناخ
planet	كوكب
clear	صافي
flood	فيضان

drought	جفاف
fire	حريق
beach	شاطئ
beautiful	جميل
forest	غابة
problem	مشكلة
area	منطقة
locals	السكان المحليون
weather	الطقس
brightly colored	ألوان زاهية
visitor	زائر
boat	قارب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
waste	يهدر	wasted
drop	يرمي - يلقي	dropped
change	يتغير	changed
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up
allow	يسمح	allowed

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hurt	يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt
come	يأتي	came
cut down	يقطع	cut down
make	يصنع	made
grow	ينمو	grew
ride	يركب	rode
swim	يسبح	swam

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

make sure	يتأكد	famous for	مشهور بـ
good for	مفيد لـ	care about	يهتم بـ

Study the following

1. **I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.**

- اكتب اليوم عن شيء فى اعتقادى أنه هام للغاية.

2. **I think we should all try to protect animal habitats.**

- أعتقد أنه من المهم أن نحاول جميعا حماية بيئات الحيوانات.

3. **Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies.**

- تحتاج الحيوانات أماكن آمنة للمعيشة. وإيجاد الطعام ورعاية صغارها.

4. **They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.**

- الحيوانات جزء من كوكبنا، لذلك يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التى تقوم بها لا تلحق الضرر بهم.

5. **There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers.**

- هناك العديد من البيئات المختلفة فى مصر مثل الصحراء والبحر والجبال والانهار.

6 It's good for everybody if we protect the habitats.

- إنه من المفيد للجميع أن نحاول حماية بيئات الحيوانات.

7 When a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place.

- عندما تكون البيئة صحية يمكن لكثير من الحيوانات ان تعيش فى مكان واحد.

8 With a good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife- watching holiday.

- وفى وجود سياحة بيئية جيدة. يمكن للناس القدوم لقضاء إجازات لمشاهدة الحياة البرية.

9 When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

- عندما يتعلم الأشخاص عن الحياة البرية سيرغبون فى الحفاظ عليها.

Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

and / but / because / so

١. نستخدم and ومعناها «و» للربط بين أفكار متشابهة فى الأثبات.

- I like my parents and I obey them.

٢. نستخدم but ومعناها «لكن» للربط بين الجمل المتناقضة أو جملة مثبتة وأخرى منفية.

- He is rich, but he is unhappy.

٣. كلمة because معناها «لأن» ويأتي قبلها النتيجة وبعدها السبب.

- I didn't go to school because I was ill.

٤. كلمة so معناها «لذلك» يأتي قبلها السبب وبعدها النتيجة.

- I was ill so I didn't go to school.

1 Listen to and read the blog. What is a habitat? Check (√) the correct answer:

1. a type of animal. ☐
2. a place near water. ☐
3. a place where an animal or plant lives. ☐

Home Archive Contact Pages

Hello, I'm Arwa - welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. استمع إلى النص

I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.



There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it. We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects.



You don't need a lot of space - here's a garden box I made for my window!

2 Complete these sentences with and, but, because, or so:

أكمل باستخدام الكلمات:

1. We planted flowers _____ birds and insects can have more food.
2. We wanted to clean up the beach _____ there was trash on it.
3. This was a beautiful river, _____ there is pollution in it now.
4. We saw turtles, pelicans, _____ lizards when we went wildlife watching.

3 Read the leaflet. What is bad for animals?

اقرأ المنشور. ما الشيء الضار للحيوانات؟

The Ras Mohammed National Park



The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit.This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and **scuba dive** here.

محمية رأس محمد الوطنية في البحر الأحمر هي منطقة رائعة للسكان المحليين والسياح ليزوروها. هذه المنطقة الجميلة في شبه جزيرة سيناء تشتهر بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة، والطقس المذهل. الناس يأتون من جميع أنحاء العالم للسباحة بأنبوب التنفس والغوص هنا.

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks.There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird watching.

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.



يمكنك أن ترى الشعاب المرجانية وكثير من الاسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية وربما أسماك القرش. هناك أيضا الكثير من الحياة البرية وهى مكان رائع لمشاهدة الطيور. المحمية الوطنية تحت الحماية ولكن مسموح للناس أن يزوروها. لأنها جميلة للغاية وكثير من الزائرين يأتون ويركبون القوارب أو يسبحون ويغوصون بأنبوب التنفس في البحر.

Activities



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: القليوبية - قليوب (2024)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Next Friday, my parents are going to _____
   a Paris b America c Egypt d England
2. It is the _____ time for my parents to go there.
   a fourth b second c third d first
3. They also want to go to the _____ to see the elephants.
   a school b zoo c park d country
4. My parents will stay for _____ there.
   a two weeks b one year c one month d one week

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We must _____ sure that the things we do, don't hurt the animals. أسوان - إدفو (2024)
   a try b do c respect d make
2. There are lots of different _____ in Egypt for animals and birds to live in.
   a habitats b accommodations c hotels d banks
3. People can go on wildlife _____ vacations. الجيزة - أوسيم (2024)
   a watching b changing c washing d going
4. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba _____. الجيزة - امبابة (2024)
   a drive b tent c dive d desert
5. The Sinai Peninsula is famous _____ its sea life. المنوفية - منوف (2024)
   a with b away c from d for
6. We go _____ under water. بني سويف - بني سويف (2024)
   a hiking b sleeping c migrating d snorkeling

7. Fires and droughts can damage animal _____.

a climate b habitats c flowers d planets

8. Don't cut _____ trees to save animals.

a up b down c of d on

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: القاهرة - الزيتون (2024)

wildlife - holidays - protect - eco-tourism

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we ① _____ these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good ② _____ people can come on wildlife watching ③ _____. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. all - habitats - should - try to - We - animal - protect. المنوفية - الشهداء (2024)

_____

2. Egypt - habitats - in - lots of - different - There are.

_____

3. holidays - can - People - wildlife - on - watching - go. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2024)

_____

4. to - need - places - Animals - safe - live. الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر (2024)

_____

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We planted flowers _____ (because) birds and insects can have more food.
2. This was a beautiful river, _____ (and) there is pollution in it now.

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. how do you go to school, Hani

2. we should protect animal habitats

7 Write an email of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب ايميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Sama to tell her about "The habitats". Your name is Nada. Your email address is nada44@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sama22@yahoo.com

The habitats

Guiding phrases

different habitats - protects habitats

New Message	
To	..... Cc Bcc
From	.....
Subject	.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review

Key vocabulary



pelican
بجعة



kingfisher
طائر الرفراف (صائد السمك)



swift
طائر السمامة



eagle
نسر / عقاب



flamingo
طائر الفلامنجو (البشروس)



falcon
صقر

sustainable	مستدام – صديق للبيئة
simple	بسيط
accommodation	اقامة
ads	اعلانات
chance	فرصة
bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
sunset	غروب الشمس
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
successful	ناجح
sightseeing	المعالم السياحية
Europe	اوروبا
Northern	شمالى
water birds	طيور مائية

European countries	دولة أوربية
ideal	مثالي – نموذجي
respect	يحترم
protected area	منطقة محمية
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء
definitely	بالتأكيد
campsite	معسكر تخييم
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
traditional vacation	عطلة تقليدية
oases	واحات
Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
distances	مسافات
warmer places	اماكن أكثر دفئًا

Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط
National Park	محمية وطنية
scuba dive	الغوص بأنبوب
wildlife watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية

flocks	مجموعات / أسراب
the Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
snorkel	يسبح بأنبوب التنفس
shark	سمكة قرش
scientists	علماء

Adjectives صفات

sensible	عاقل / حكيم / منطقى
strange	غريب
popular	شعبي - مشهور
traditional	تقليدي

fantastic	رائع
certain	معين - محدد
safe	آمن
close to	قريب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
hatch يفقس	hatched
dare يجرؤ	dared
flock يتجمع / يحتشد	flocked
succeed ينجح	succeeded
sail يبحر	sailed
damage يدمر	damaged
protect يحمي	protected
respect يحترم	respected
migrate يهاجر	migrated
provide يمد / يزود	provided
support يساند / يدعم	supported
explore يستكشف	explored
waste يهدر	wasted
clean up ينظف	cleaned up

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
fly يطير	flew
mean يعنى	meant
build يبني	built
catch يصطاد	caught
take يلتقط - يأخذ	took
hurt يؤلم - يؤذي	hurt
go down تغرب	went down
set off ينطلق	set off
grow ينمو	grew

Language focus

قواعد لغوية

must \ mustn't

- نستخدم must عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما يجب أن نفعله أو مهم أن نفعله
- نستخدم mustn't عندما لا يكون مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

- We must bring a tent.
- We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

- لاحظ يأتى بعد must / mustn't الفعل فى المصدر.

فاعل + must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

- You mustn't hurt birds.

- لا تأتى to بعد must / mustn't .

Question

كلمة استفهام + must + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- What must we do to protect the environment?

- عند السؤال بـ «هل؟» نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Must + فاعل + مصدر الفعل + تكملة الجملة?

- Must they respect nature? - Yes, they must.
- Must she wear a dress? - No, she mustn't.

The first conditional (IF)

- نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن أشياء محتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

Form التكوين

If + فاعل + present simple + فاعل + will + مصدر الفعل

- تذكر يتكون المضارع البسيط من present simple :

(He / She / It + verb + s /es / ies)
(We / You / They + inf.)

- If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.

- إذا جاءت (If) أول الجملة نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين وإذا جاءت فى المنتصف لا نضع فاصلة.
- لاحظ : عند النفي نستخدم التالي

If + { فاعل مفرد + doesn't + مصدر الفعل / فاعل جمع + don't + مصدر الفعل } + فاعل + won't + مصدر الفعل

- If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.
- If we don't get up early, we won't catch the bus.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 2

Eco-tourism

1 Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit. Tourism is important for Egypt, but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation. They mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

Lesson 3

Bird migration

2 Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. Many water birds such as pelicans migrate to Egypt, too. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how these birds migrate.

Lessons 4&5

3

New Message		
To	sama22@yahoo.com	Cc Bcc
From	nada44@gmail.com	
Subject	the habitats	

Dear Sama,

We should all try to protect animal habitats. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. When a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. We mustn't waste water or drop litter, etc. Write to me soon.

Love

Nada

Al-Azhar Test

Animal habitats

4 There are many animal habitats. Some animals can live in the desert and other animals can live in the forest. Lots of animals can live in rivers. Some animals can live in the sea, too. We should protect them.

Test unit 10

The Ras Mohammed National Park

5 The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the Red Sea. It is fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. It is a beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula. It is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish. You might see sharks there, too.

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

famous - doing - Sea - National - fantastic

Ali : Hello, Ahmed. What are you ❶ _____?

Ahmed : Hello, Ali. I am reading about Ras Mohammed ❷ _____ Park.

Ali : Well, Where is it?

Ahmed : It is on the Red ❸ _____

Ali : What do you know about it?

Ahmed : It is ❹ _____ for its sea life.

Ali : Wow! It's a ❺ _____ place.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	swim	dive	careful	hatch	_____
2	worm	successful	sensible	real	_____
3	river	desert	lake	sea	_____
4	How	Who	Which	Watch	_____
5	oases	swift	eagle	flamingo	_____

3 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. If something is _____, it happens and is true.
   a successful b similar c sensible d real
2. We _____ sleep early every day.
   a mustn't b are c have d must
3. Some local birds _____ to another places.
   a migrate b like c hatch d try
4. If I am hungry, I _____ a snack.
   a has b will have c having d have to
5. The _____ is the biggest bird in the world.
   a eagle b swift c flamingo d ostrich

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

6. When you have a fever, you _____ play in streets.

a mustn't b didn't c can d must

7. This bird has beautiful _____.

a problems b feathers c distances d habitats

8. We wanted to clean up the beach _____ there was trash on it.

a and b because c so d but

9. We mustn't _____ here because there might be crocodiles!

a swims b swimming c swam d swim

10. Some birds fly very long _____.

a skies b distances c clouds d mountains

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Rahma and her family went on a vacation to Alexandria two years ago. They visited many historical buildings there. On Sunday, they visited the Library of Alexandria. It is an amazing building. They also visited the Quitbay Citadel on Monday. It is on the sea there. It is a very ancient building. On Thursday, they went to the beach and swam in the sea. They stayed in a nice hotel there. They spent seven days there.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. What did they do two years ago?

_____

2. Which places did they visit there?

_____

3. When did they go to the library?

_____

B- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The passage is about a _____.

a vacation b palace c museum d library

5. They spent _____ in Alexandria.

a a month b seven days c one week d a year

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. People - go - vacations - on - wildlife - can - watching.

2. don't - build - birds - nests - Singing .

3. go - can - People - safari - on - Egypt - a desert - in.

4. bring - definitely - our - going to - cameras - We're.

5. hummingbird - the - is - The - bird - smallest - bee.

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Animal habitats

the desert - forests - the mountains - the sea - protect

Test on Unit 10



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Akram's family is a _____ one.
   a big b modern c old d small
2. Akram lives in a big apartment in _____.
   a Cairo b Giza c Aswan d Alexandria
3. He wants to buy some _____ and a new phone.
   a food b drinks c animals d books
4. He visits his uncle on _____.
   a Monday b Friday c Tuesday d Saturday

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____ is a powerful bird. الغربية - السنطة (2024)
   a worm b ant c butterfly d eagle
2. Eco-tourism is more _____ than traditional tourism. البحر الأحمر - الغردقة (2024)
   a expensive b sustainable c harmful d dangerous
3. We should _____ after the environment. المنوفية - الشهداء (2024)
   a try b look c make d take

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

flocks - way - Lake - sea

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large ① _____ of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes,oases, and seas. ② _____ Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos. Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the ③ _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

المنوفية - الشهداء (2023)

Eco-tourism in Egypt offers a number of **sustainable** experiences. Visitors can explore colorful coral reefs and enjoy water sports along the Red Sea, while desert safaris provide a good chance for tourists to discover the natural beauty of the desert.

Climbing mountains in the Sinai Peninsula offers amazing views and a chance to connect with nature for those who climb its mountains. A calm way to enjoy Egypt's wildlife and ancient culture is to take a relaxing sail down the Nile.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Desert safaris allows the tourists to discover the beauty of the .....

a mountain b Nile c coral reefs d desert

2. The underlined word "**sustainable**" means to ..... .

a damage the environment b look after the environment

c explore coral reefs d climb a mountain

B- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

3. What can visitors do along the Red Sea?

.....

4. Summarize the second paragraph into one sentence.

.....

5. What can tourists explore in the Red Sea?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. take - the environment - **You** - to - of - want - care. القليوبية - قها (2023)

.....

2. birds - see - **There** - lots of - to - interesting - are. البحر الأحمر - الغردقة (2023)

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We mustn't _____ **(wastes)** water or drop litter. أسوان - إدفو (2024)

2. If they study more, they _____ **(passes)** the exam. القاهرة - الوايلي (2024)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. you might have four eggs in a nest

_____

2. how do these birds know where to go

_____

8 Write a paragraph of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The Ras Mohammed National Park

Guiding phrases

fantastic place - amazing weather

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

Theme 4

Unit 11

Myself and others

How can I help?

كيف يمكننى أن اساعدك؟



Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research and write about charity work and volunteering.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن العمل الخيرى والتطوع.

2. Use infinitives of purpose.

- يستخدم الطالب المصدر لتوضيح الغرض أو سبب فعل الشيء.

3. Read and understand three texts about mystery objects.

- يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ثلاثة نصوص عن أشياء غامضة.

4. Listen to an interview about volunteering.

- يستمع الطالب إلى مقابلة عن التطوع.

5. Use -ly and others adverbs.

- يستخدم الطالب الأحوال المنتهية بـ (ly-) والاحوال التى لا تنتهى ب(ly-).

6. Read and understand a story about two brothers.

- يقرأ ويفهم الطالب قصة عن آخين.

7. Say words containing (sh,ch,and tch).

- يقول الطالب كلمات بها الأصوات (sh- ch- tch).

8. Write a biography of a volunteer.

- يكتب الطالب سيرة ذاتية عن شخص متطوع.

9. Create a leaflet about being a good citizen.

- ينشئ الطالب منشور عن كيفية أن تكون مواطن صالح.

Lesson 1 ★ A visit to the Museum

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

donate	يتبّرع
participate	يشترك / يشارك
support	يؤيد / يدعم
volunteer	يتطوع

help out	يشارك فى حمل العبء
start up	يُؤسِّس / ينشئ
look after	يعتنى بـ
(be) kind to (adj)	يكون لطيف تجاه

Other words كلمات أخرى

community	المجتمع
idea	فكرة
fresh	طازج
vegetable garden	حديقة خضراوات / نباتية
popular	مشهور / محبوب
trash	قمامة
after-school club	نادى ما بعد المدرسة
skills	مهارات
nervous	قلق / متوتر

kindergarten	روضة أطفال (حضانة)
paintings	لوحات / رسومات
own	خاص بـ
sick	مريض
neighbor	جار
store	متجر
used to	اعتاد أن
get better	يتحسن
had to	مضطر أن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
start يبدأ	started
support يدعم	supported
volunteer يتطوع	volunteered
paint يلون	painted

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
choose يختار	chose
grow يزرع	grew
teach يعلم / يدرس	taught
think يفكر	thought

train	يتدرب	trained	
decide	يقرر	decided	
donate	يتبرع	donated	
take	يأخذ	took	
make	يصنع	made	
have / has	يمتلك	had	



Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

It's really good fun	هذا أمر ممتع حقًا
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
at first	فى البداية
for 45 minutes	لمدة ٤٥ دقيقة
difficult for her...	صعب عليها
look forward to + (v-ing/noun)	يتطلع إلى
on a Thursday	يوم الخميس

◉ ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام أداة النكرة (a) قبل أيام الأسبوع للحديث عن يوم واحد معين.

- She died on a Tuesday.



Definitions تعريفات

donate	يتبرع	to give something away to help a person or organization[1].
participate	يشارك	to take part [2] in something
support	يدعم	to do things that help a particular[3] person or group.
volunteer	يتطوع	to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.

Arabic Meaning

١- منظمة
٢- يشارك
٣- معين



Study the following

1. **We all had to choose something we could do to support other people.**

- كان يجب علينا جميعًا اختيار شىء يمكننا القيام به لدعم الآخرين.

2. **People wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables.**

- أراد الناس بدء تنفيذ حديقة نباتية فى المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة.

3. **People volunteered to help clean trash from the river.**

- تطوع الناس للمساعدة فى تنظيف القمامة من النهر.

4. I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills.

- بدأت الانضمام فى ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الصغار مهارات كرة القدم.

5. It was great to have so many children participating.

- كان من الرائع مشاركة هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

6. We train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football.

- نحن نتدرب و نلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال يتحسنون فى كرة القدم.

7. I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday.

- قررت المساعدة فى فصل رياض الأطفال يوم الخميس.

8. We are starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week.

- سنبدأ مشروع حيث يفكر فيه الأطفال فى قصصهم الخاصة الأسبوع المقبل.

9. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick.

- اعتقد أنه سيكون من الجيد أن تفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى.

10. We took the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

- أخذنا اللوحات إلى المستشفى لجعل الغرف تبدو أجمل.

11. My neighbor has always been kind to us.

- كانت جارتى دائمًا لطيفة معنًا.

12. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger.

- اعتادت أن تساعد أمى فى الأعتناء بى عندما كنت أصغر سنًا.

13. What did some people want to grow?

- ماذا أراد بعض الناس أن يزرعوا؟

14. Our parents donated lots of toys.

- تبرع والدينا بكثير من اللعب.

1 Match the words in the box to their meanings. You can use a dictionary?

صل الكلمات بالإطار مع معانيها:

donate - participate - support - volunteer

1. to do things that help a particular person or group: _____
2. to take part in something: _____
3. to do a job or activity and not take any money for it: _____
4. to give something away to help a person or organization: _____

2 Listen and read. How often does Tamer volunteer?

استمع واقرأ. كم مرة قام تامر بالتطوع؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to **support** other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people **volunteered** to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.



- مرحبًا، أنا تامر، بدأنا مشروعًا فى المدرسة يسمى مساعدة المجتمع. كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى فى مجتمعنا. كان هناك الكثير من الأفكار على سبيل المثال؛ أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة نباتية فى المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة. كان ذلك محبوبًا جدًا. وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة فى تنظيف القمامة من النهر، حتى تكون بيئات الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا.

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children **participating**.

- قررت أننى أريد مساعدة الأطفال فى مدرستى. أنا أحب الرياضة، لذلك انضممت إلى ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. كنت متوتر بعض الشئ فى البداية، ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال وكان أباؤهم سعداء للغاية. وكان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

- أقوم بتدريس الحصة بعد المدرسة أيام الأربعاء. مدة الحصة ٤٥ دقيقة، حيث نتدرب ونلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال يتحسنون فى كرة القدم، وهذا أمر ممتع جدًا.

1 Listen and read about some more ideas for the Community Help project. Then answer the questions:

استمع واقرأ لبعض الافكار عن مساعدة المجتمع. ثم اجب عن الأسئلة:

Reem



I love reading, so I decided to **help out** in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too.

We're **starting up** a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

Ibrahim

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees.

Our parents **donated** lots of toys, too.



We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

Mariam



My neighbor has always **been kind to** us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

2 Read and circle the correct words: اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

1. I think it's very important to be **kind to / kind at** animals.
2. My mom sometimes **helps on / helps out** at the school library.
3. I **looked after / looked for** my neighbors' pet cat when they went on vacation.
4. We decided to **start on / start up** a local children's charity.

Did you know? هل كنت تعلم؟

There are charities all over the world that help people, animals, and the planet. They help with many different things, including education, health, culture and nature.

يوجد جمعيات خيرية بجميع أنحاء العالم لمساعدة الناس والحيوانات والكوكب. هم يقدمون المساعدات بعدة أشكال مختلفة متضمنة التعليم والصحة والثقافة والطبيعة.



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The neighbor lives with _____. بني سويف - بني سويف (2024)

a her brother b her husband c her sister d no one

2. They spend time _____.

a eating pizza b sleeping c watching TV d playing football

3. They water _____ in the garden.

a flowers b floors c flour d foods

4. The neighbor is very _____ to her.

a cruel b kind c bad d sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eman _____ a large amount of money to a charity. قنا - فرشوط (2024)

a borrowed b took c donated d trained

2. Students are encouraged to _____ in sports activities. الجيزة - أوسيم (2024)

a participate b dislike c hate d plane

3. Mr Badr _____ to take us all in his car.

a played b volunteered c said d made

4. I should _____ my little sister. سوهاج - طهطا (2024)

a take after b look out c start up d look after

5. Habiba is five years old. She goes to the _____.

a prep school b primary school c university d kindergarten

6. To " _____ " is to give something away to help a person or organization.

a eat b play c donate d take

7. We should _____ our friends and help them. الغربية - غرب طنطا (2024)

a shout b fight c support d scare

8. We decided to _____ up a local children's charity. سوهاج - البلينا (2024)

a end b start c play d read

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الغربية - بسيون (2024)

donated - younger - store - shopping

Reem is my neighbor. She was so kind to us. She helped my mom to look after me when I was ❶ ..... . Now, she is older and it's difficult for her to go ❷ ..... . So I ask her what she needs. Then, I go to the ❸ ..... to buy it. I love helping her as she helped us in the past.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. did - people - What - to grow - want - some? الدقهلية - ميت غمر (2024)

.....

2. pet - looked after - my neighbor's - I - cat. الغربية - بسيون (2024)

.....

3. donated - Our - toys - parents - lots of. المنوفية - الشهداء (2024)

.....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

who did Tamer want to help .....

6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A volunteering project you did

Guiding questions

1. What ideas did you do for the Community Help project?
2. When did you start up your project?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2 We use this to pick up the trash

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



multi-grip
قبضة متعددة



nature camera
كاميرا الطبيعة (تستخدم فى البرية)



grabber
خطّاف - لاقط القمامة



handle
مقبض



controller
جهاز تحكم

install (ed)	يركّب (جهاز)
record (ed)	يسجّل

button	زر
joysticks	عصا التحكم فى الألعاب
film (ed)	يصور فيلمًا

Other words كلمات أخرى

action button	زر الحركة
home button	زر الصفحة الرئيسية
day center	مركز نهارى - لمساعدة كبار السن
interesting	شيق
menu	قائمة
a top	غطاء زجاجة
games console	وحدة ألعاب إلكترونية
exhibition	معرض
day center	مركز نهارى - لمساعدة كبار السن

clean up	عملية التنظيف
gloves	قفازات
metal stick	عصا معدن
finger	أصبع
jar	برطمان
glass bottle	قارورة من الزجاج
strong enough	قوى كفاية
wildlife	الحياة البرية
character	شخصية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
carry	يحمل	carried
drop	يُلقى	dropped
jump	يقفز	jumped
press	يضغط	pressed
protect	يحمى	protected
collect	يجمع	collected
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
put	يضع	put
run	يجرى	ran
hold	يمسك	held
show	يوضح	showed
learn	يتعلم	learned/ learnt

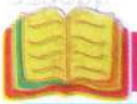


Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

pick up the trash	يلتقط القمامة
take off the tops	يخلع الغطاء
takes you back to	يعود بك إلى
do other actions	يقوم بأفعال أخرى
turn on the radio	يشغل المذياع
play a game	يلعب لعبة

swim under water	يسبح تحت الماء
on the ground	على الأرضية
at the top	على القمة
in the bag	فى الحقيبة
goes over ears	يوضع فوق الأذنين

◉ **ملحوظة:** كلمة (controller) وكلمة (joystick) لهما معنى متقارب جدًا ولكن يمكن اعتبار (controller) مصطلح اشمل وأعم من (joystick):



Definitions تعريفات

button زر	something you press to make something happen
controller جهاز تحكم	something we use to play a computer game
joystick عصا التحكم فى الألعاب	something you can move in different directions to control a computer game

Study the following

1. We carry black bags for the trash we collect.
- نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التى نجمعها.
2. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end.
- إنها عصا معدنية طويلة باصبعين فى النهاية.
3. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top.
- تفتح الأصابع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض فى الأعلى.
4. It's better than picking things up with your hands.
- أنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.
5. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top.
- امسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضع هذا فى الأعلى.
6. We are using them to film wildlife.
- نحن نستخدمهم (الكاميرا الطبيعية) لتصوير الحياة البرية.
7. When you press the home button, it takes you back to the menu.
- عندما نضغط زر الصفحة الرئيسية، فإنه يعيدك إلى القائمة.
8. You use the action buttons to tell your character to run or jump.
- يمكنك استخدام أزرار الحركة لإخبار شخصيتك (فى ألعاب الفيديو) بالجري أو القفز.
9. Do you want to play a game with me?
- هل تريد أن تلعب معى؟

1 Listen and read. استمع واقرأ:

Tamim

1. grabber

استمع إلى النصوص:



When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the **handle** at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدى قفازات لحماية ايدينا. نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التى نجمعها. وانظر! نحن نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إنها متعة كبيرة فى الاستخدام. إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بإصبعين فى نهايتها. تفتح الأصابع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض فى الإعلى. تقوم بفتح وإغلاق أصابعك لالتقاط سلة المهملات، ثم تضعها فى الكيس. تقول أمى أنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.

Dalida

2. multi-grip



I volunteer at **a day center** for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

أنا متطوع فى مركز نهارى لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات. أيديهم ليست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك يستخدمون هذا لخلع الأغطية. هذه هى الطريقة التى تستخدمها. أمسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضعها لأعلى. أمسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى، ثم قم بتدويره. إنها حقًا سهلة الاستعمال. أحب عرض ذلك على الأشخاص فى المركز النهارى.

Hamza

3. nature camera



We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher **installed** two of these in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to **film** animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we **record** how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

نحن نقوم بتنفيذ مشروع الحياة البرية فى المدرسة، وقد قام معلمى بتثبيت اثنين منهما فى الغابة. نحن نستخدمهم لتصوير الحياة البرية. لقد وضع واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. ثم سجلنا عدد الحيوانات والطيور التى نراها وماذا يفعلون. إنه أمر مثير للاهتمام. لقد تعلمنا الكثير!

2 Read again and answer the questions: اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة:

1. Why does Tamim use a grabber on a beach clean-up?

2. Why do the old people use a multi-grip?

3. Why does Hamza's teacher put nature cameras in the forest?

3 Read and listen to the dialog. Do you think Amira's mom has played a video game before? Why / Why not?

اقرأ واستمع للحوار. هل تعتقد أن والدة أميرة لعبت ألعاب الفيديو من قبل؟ لماذا؟ لما لا؟

Tapescript نص الاستماع



استمع إلى النص:

Mom : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?

Amira : Oh, that's the **controller**. It's what you use to play the game.

Mom : Cool! And what does this do?

Amira : That's the home button. When you press it, it takes you back to the menu.

Mom : OK. And what are these buttons for?

Amira : Those are the action **buttons**. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

Mom : And what are these parts for?

Amira : They're the **joysticks**. They help you move your character around.

Mom : OK. So, the home button takes you to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.

Amira : That's right. Do you want to play a game with me?

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

Infinitives of purpose استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

◉ **We use to + a verb in the base form to explain why we do something:**

◉ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للتعبير عن الهدف من القيام بفعل شئ أو ذكر السبب.

- We wear gloves to protect our hands.

◉ **We use also to + a verb in the base form to answer questions with Why.**

◉ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للإجابة عن السؤال البادئ بكلمة (Why).

- Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?
  To protect my hands.

◉ ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (for) للتعبير عن الغرض بشرط أن يأتى بعدها اسم:

- We stopped at the café for a drink = to have a drink.

Practice

◉ **Read and correct the form of the words.**

1. I bought a card _____ **(to sent)** to my grandma.
2. Reham listens to music _____ **(help)** her relax.
3. My uncle went to Cairo _____ **(to visiting)** a friend.
4. I went to the supermarket _____ **(to bought)** fresh fruit.
5. We go to school _____ **(for learn).**
6. Rahaf studies hard _____ **(pass)** her exam.
7. My mom is using an app _____ **(to learning)** French.



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are two _____ on the game console. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)
   a fingers b tools c joysticks d sticks
2. A _____ is a place where we can help old people.
   a city center b day center c town center d school
3. We are using _____ to film wildlife. الإسكندرية - العجمي (2024)
   a controllers b handles c buttons d nature cameras
4. The plumber is coming to _____ the new washing machine.
   a fall b write c feel d install
5. Old people use a _____ to take off the tops. أسيوط - البداري (2024)
   a multi-grip b joystick c controller d begger
6. When you press the home _____, it takes you back to the menu.
   a land b button c bottom d town
7. A _____ is a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. الملوفية - شبين الكوم (2024)
   a begger b ruler c grabber d leader
8. A " _____ " is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game. المنيا - العدوة (2024)
   a pen b joystick c stick d paper

2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Video games can be a great source of fun for kids, but it's important to choose the suitable game for each age. The game could be educational or just for fun. You should keep in mind a few things when selecting video games for kids.

Consider your child's interests when choosing a game. Do they like puzzles, adventure games, or sports games?

Some games can help kids learn new things, such as math, science, or language skills. Look for games that teach educational skills in a fun and enjoyable way.

Multiplayer games can be a great way for kids to make friends and communicate with others. Just make sure the game online is safe.

No matter what kind of game you choose, make sure it's something that your child will enjoy playing. And have fun playing together!

A: Choose the correct answer:

1. It's important to choose the suitable game for each _____
   a color b time c age d name

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. Some games can help the kids _____ friends.

a do b make c hate d dislike

B: Answer the following questions:

3. What new things can the kids learn from games?

_____

4. What is the importance of multiplayer games?

_____

5. Give a suitable title for the passage.

_____

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. does - on the radio - **What** - do - the button? البحيرة - إيتاي البارود (2024)

_____

2. easy - **It's** - use - really - to. المنوفية - بركة السبع (2024)

_____

3. this - **Is** - games console - new - your? أسيوط - البداري (2024)

_____

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We go to the station _____ **(to caught)** the bus. الغربية - غرب طنطا (2024)
2. I went to the sports center _____ **(play)** volleyball.
3. Rana turned on the radio _____ **(to listened)** to the news.
4. I'll open the fridge _____ **(to drank)** water. كفر الشيخ - دسوق (2024)
5. Nesma wears sunglasses _____ **(for protect)** her eyes. الغربية - السنطة (2024)
6. Sondos goes to the library _____ **(reading)** books.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. come here, jana.

_____

2. what are these parts for

_____

Lesson 3 ★ It's good to give back to the community

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

confidence	ثقة
fundraising	جمع تبرعات / إعانات مالية
reward	مكافأة
jealous	غيور / حسود

sparrow	عصفور صغير
give back	يرد الجميل
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا / يختلط مع الناس

Other words كلمات أخرى

summer school	مدرسة صيفية
volunteering	التطوع
advice	نصيحة
teenager	مراهق
the richest	الأغنى
broken (adj)	مكسور
wing	جناح
strong	قوى
huge	ضخم
full of	ملئ بـ

alone	وحيدًا / بمفرده
gold	ذهب
silver	فضة
thick	سميك
the moon	القمر
skills	مهارات
look down	ينظر إلى اسفل
look after	يعتنى بـ
fly away	يطير بعيدًا
disappear	يختفى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
want يريد	wanted
share يشارك	shared
disappear يختفى	disappeared
reply يرد	replied
climb يتسلق	climbed
reach يصل	reached

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
break يكسر	broke
cut يقطع	cut
grow up يكبر	grew up
fly يطير	flew
find يجد	found
catch يمسك	caught

Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

a broken wing	جناح مكسور	catch a sparrow	يصطاد عصفور
give a reward	يقدم مكافأة	reach the moon	يصل القمر

Definitions تعريفات

confidence	ثقة	feeling sure about your abilities
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا	spend time with people in a friendly way
fundraising	جمع تبرعات	collecting money for a charity
give back	يرد الجميل	to help because you have received so much
reward	مكافأة	something you get for doing a good job or being helpful
jealous	غيور	feeling unhappy because someone has what you want

Study the following

1. **The older brother was the richest man in the village.**

- كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل فى القرية.

2. **The younger brother was kind and shared what he had with his friends.**

- كان الأخ الأصغر لطيفًا وشارك ما كان لديه مع أصدقائه.

3. **The younger brother found a bird with a broken wing.**

- عثر الأخ الأصغر على طائر بجناح مكسور.

4. **The younger brother cared for the bird all winter.**

- اعتنى الأخ الأصغر بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء.

5. **Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me.**

- ازرع هذه البذرة فى حديقتك واعتنى بها كما اعتنيت بى.

6. **When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver.**

- عندما فتح الأخ واحدة (من الخضروات) كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة.

7. **The older brother caught a sparrow and broke its wing.**

- امسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه.

8. **A thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon.**

- نما نبات سميك وطويل وصعد إلى القمر.

9. **The older brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward.**

- تسلق الأخ الأكبر النبات للبحث عن مكافأته.

10 The older brother didn't find any gold. - لم يجد الأخ الأكبر أى ذهب.

11 The younger brother lived happily and helped others.

- عاش الأخ الأصغر بسعادة وساعد الآخرين.

1 Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

استمع إلى النصوص:

Presenter:
Today we are talking about volunteering in the community, and here is a community volunteer leader, Rawan Ibrahim. Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?

Rawan:
I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them, and I've volunteered ever since.

Presenter:
Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now she volunteers in the Summer Schools Activity Group every summer. In the group, Rawan helps out with the children's activities, like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

Rawan:
It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.

Presenter: That sounds like difficult but rewarding work.

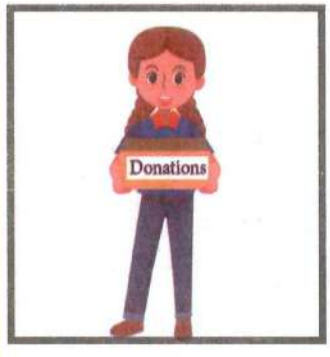
Rawan:
Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy.

2 Read the last part of the interview and match the words in bold with the correct meanings

اقرأ أخر جزء فى المقابلة وصل الكلمات المكتوبة بخط سميك مع معانيها الصحيحة:

1. socialize	a. collecting money for a charity
2. confidence	b. to help others because you have received so much
3. fundraising	c. spend time with people in a friendly way
4. give back	d. feeling sure about your abilities

Rawan You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to **socialize** and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you **confidence**. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. **Fundraising** helps charities get the money they need. It's good to **give back** to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!



3 Read and listen:

اقرأ واستمع:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

ذات مرة، كان هناك شقيقان مختلفان تمامًا. كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل فى القرية. لقد كان ثريًا، لكنه كان دائمًا يريد المزيد من المال، لم يكن الأخ الأصغر ثريًا، لكنه كان لطيفاً ويشارك ما لديه مع اصدقائه.

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."

فى احد الأيام، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائراً مكسور الجناح. قال: "لا تقلق أيها الطائر الصغير". أنا سوف أعتنى بك. "اعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء، وعندما أصبح الطائر قويًا مرة أخرى، قال: "يمكنك الطيران بعيدًا الآن". قال الطائر: "أولاً، أريد أن أعطيك مكافأة". ازرع هذه البذرة فى حديقتك واعتنى بها كما اعتنيت بى".

The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها وهى تنمو لتصبح نباتًا ضخمًا يحتوى على خضروات برتقالية كبيرة. وعندما قطع الأخ واحدة، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! لقد اصبح الآن أغنى رجل فى القرية.

The older brother was jealous. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a sparrow and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

كان الأخ الكبير غيورًا. ذهب إلى بيت أخيه، فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. فى اليوم التالى، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه، قال: "سأعتنى بك، ثم يمكنك أن تعطينى مكافأة". اعتنى بالطائر، وعندما أصبح قويًا، قال: "الآن أريد مكافأتى". أجاب الطائر الصغير: "هذه هى مكافأتك. ازرع هذه البذرة واعتنى بها جيدًا."

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل وسميك ووصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليبحث عن مكافأته. ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة.

The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the Moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

ولم يجد الأخ الأكبر أى ذهب. والآن ينظر أسفل القمر، ويشاهد أخيه الأصغر يعيش بسعادة ويساعد الآخرين.

Language focus

قواعد لغوية

1 Adjective صفة

◉ الصفة تصف الأسم.

- My daughter is beautiful.

2 Adverb حال (ظرف)

◉ الظرف (الحال) يصف الفعل.

- My daughter is speaking beautifully.

◉ **We can make adverbs by adding -ly to most adjectives.**

◉ يتكون الحال غالبًا بإضافة (-ly) إلى الصفة.

- slow → slowly
- They walked slowly.

◉ **For adjectives that end in a consonant followed by (y), add (-ily).**

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (-ily).

- angry → angrily
- happy → happily
- He shouted angrily.

◉ **For adjectives that end in (le) we omit (e) and add (y).**

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(le) يتم حذف (e) وإضافة (y).

- possible → possibly - gentle → gently

Position of the adverb مكان الحال فى الجملة

- Our team is playing badly. ◉ يأتى الحال عادة بعد الفعل.
- She quickly learned the rules. ◉ يمكن أن يأتى الحال قبل الفعل ومفعوله.
- She learned the rules quickly. ◉ يمكن أن يأتى الحال بعد الفعل ومفعوله.
- She learned quickly the rules.(XX) ◉ لا يأتى الحال بين الفعل ومفعوله.

ملاحظات هامة

◉ لاحظ هناك احوال شاذة.

1- Some adverbs are irregular:

good → well fast → fast hard → hard right → right

late → late wrong → wrong early → early high → high

2- Use how to ask about adverbs:

◉ استخدم كيف للسؤال عن الحال.

- How did Mo Salah play last match?
  He played very well.

3- feel - become - get - look - sound

◉ هذه الأفعال يأتى بعدها صفة وليس حال.

- I feel happy when I see her.

Practice

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Nagwa and Lama played _____ **(happy)** in the park.
2. Gameela _____ **(gentle)** picked up the cat.
3. Eman learned how to play chess _____ **(good)**.
4. Hoda isn't very _____ **(well)** at basketball.

5. Soha closed the window _____ **(quiet)** as everyone was asleep.

6. Tarek saw his friend dropping litter and shouted _____ **(anger)** .

7. **A:** How does Aya eat? **B:** She eats _____ **(hungry)** .

2 Use the adjectives in the box to make adverbs. Then complete the sentences:

استخدم الصفات فى الإطار لصياغة الأحوال . ثم اكمل الجمل:

angry - bad - good - fast - quiet

1. Younis hates playing tennis. He plays _____.

2. Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really _____.

3. Sherif opened the door _____ because his little brother was sleeping.

4. Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very _____.

5. I heard two people shouting _____ in the street today.

3 Are the sentences correct (✓) or incorrect (×)? Correct the incorrect sentences:

هل الجمل صحيحة ام غير صحيحة؟ قم بتصحيح الجمل الغير صحيحة:

1. Adam was very hungry, and he ate his meal quickly. ☐

2. Their cousins donated kindly money to our charity. ☐

3. Mr Ibrahim waited patiently for the train to arrive. ☐

4. Fareeda plays beautifully the piano and the violin. ☐

5. Dalida volunteered happily at the children's day center. ☐

Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الرمز الصوتى /sh/ مثل نطق (ش) فى اللغة العربية ونرمز لها بالرمز الصوتى /ʃ/ مثل (ship).
- ندرس أيضًا نطق الرمز الصوتى /tch/ - /ch/ مثل نطق (تش) فى اللغة العربية ونرمز لها بالرمز الصوتى /tʃ/ مثل (chip).

1 Look, listen, and repeat: انظر واستمع وردد:

sound /sh/


ship سفينة


wash يغسل


cash فلوس نقدية


shop محل


dish طبق


sheep خروف


fish سمكة


shell قوقعة / صدفة


shoe حذاء

sound /ch/


chip رقاقة


chop يقطع


reach يصل



teacher مدرسة


lunch غداء


cheese جبنة


rich غنى

sound /tch/


watch يشاهد / ساعة يد


catch يمسك / يصطاد


kitchen مطبخ



Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Teenagers should _____ if they can. المنوفية - قويسنا (2024)

a write b play c volunteer d eat

2. You learn to talk to people you wouldn't _____.

a meet b run c lead d feed

3. It's good to _____ to the place where you live.

a give back b give away c give out d give up

4. Volunteering gives you _____.

a confidence b importance c happiness d sadness

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. To " _____ " is to help others because you have received so much. المنوفية - اشمون (2024)

a look after b give back c give up d look at

2. I hate _____ people.

a jealous b helpful c useful d good

3. I will give you a _____ for your hard work. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

a river b cliff c time d reward

4. _____ helps charities get the money they need. الأقصر - إسنا (2024)

a Confidence b Give back c Fundraising d Socialize

5. They _____ a lot of money to charities. الغربية - السنطة (2024)

a ate b donated c killed d beated

6. He likes seeing the _____ flying in the sky.

a rats b penguins c donkeys d sparrows

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. plays - tennis - Younis - well.

2. after - looked - bird - the - The man. (2024) المنوفية - بركة السبع

3. was - The bag - full of - and - gold - silver.

4. younger - wasn't - The - rich - brother. (2024) الدقهلية - شربين

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is eating his sandwich _____ (hungry). (2024) كفر الشيخ - دسوق

2. He is studying _____ (hardly). (2024) الدقهلية - شربين

3. I heard a boy shouting _____ (angry) in the class. (2024) الإسكندرية - العجمي

4. **A:** How did she play the piano? **B:** She played _____ (good).

5. She _____ (gentle) picked up the cat. (2024) الغربية - بسيون

6. She did _____ (good) in the exam. (2024) الدقهلية - ميت غمر

7. I hate playing tennis. I play _____ (bad). (2024) المنوفية - شبين الكوم

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. rawan learns many skills

2. how does Amr eat

Lessons 4&5 ★ Writing: A biography and project

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

youth	الشباب
social sciences	علوم اجتماعية
citizen	مواطن

fundraiser	جامع التبرعات
award	جائزة

Other words كلمات أخرى

biography	سيرة ذاتية
early life	في بداية حياة
volunteering	التطوع
preparatory school	المدرسة الإعدادية
university	جامعة
leader	قائد

successful	ناجح
since then	منذ ذلك الحين
heading	عناوين
waste	نفاية / مخلفات
surprised	مندهش
leaflet	منشور

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
participate	يشارك	participated
raise	يجمع	raised
reduce	يقلل	reduced
organize	ينظم	organized
respect	يحترم	respected

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
lead	يقود	led
run	يدير	ran
win	يفوز	won



Phrases and prepositions عبارات وحروف جر

do a beach clean-up	يقوم بعملية تنظيف الشاطئ
deliver food boxes	يوصل صناديق الطعام
raise money for	يجمع أموال لـ
win an award	يفوز بجائزة
run a charity	يُدير منظمة خيرية

make the world better place	جعل العالم مكان أفضل
reduce waste	تقليل النفايات
participate in	يشارك فى
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق

ملاحظات هامة

Reward: مكافئة غير رسمية (بسيطة)
I gave him a reward for good behaviour

Award: جائزة رسمية – يفضل ذكر اسم الجائزة
Fareeda won the "2020 community worker" award.



Study the following

1. **Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.**
   – ساعدت فريدة والدتها فى شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سنًا.
2. **She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up.**
   – قامت هى وفريقًا من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ.
3. **She organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.**
   – نظمت أول حدث خيرى لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات فى المجتمع.
4. **She organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.**
   – نظمت حدثًا لجمع التبرعات (المعونات) لجمع الأموال لانشاء ملعب جديد.
5. **Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo.**
   – بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة تطوعية مجتمعية فى القاهرة.
6. **Help people who are old or sick.** – ساعد الناس المسنين أو المرضى.
7. **Let's all be good citizens.** – دعونا جميعًا نكون مواطنين صالحين.
8. **Volunteering isn't boring, It's interesting.** – العمل التطوعى ليس مملًا. هذا عمل رائع.

1 Read Fareeda Hassan's biography. How many cities participated in the "Youth Give Back" event?

اقرأ السيرة الذاتية لفريدة حسن. كم عدد المدن المشاركة في حدث الشباب يرد الجميل؟



Fareeda Hassan: A Biography

- فريدة حسن: سيرة ذاتية.

Early Life

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.

- الحياة المبكرة

ولدت فريدة حسن فى الإسكندرية عام ١٩٩٤. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدتها فى شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سنًا.

Volunteering at School

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

- العمل التطوعى فى المدرسة.

بدأت فريدة الدراسة الإعدادية فى عام ٢٠٠٦. وهنا شاركت فى أول عمل تطوعى لها. قامت هى وفريق من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ. وفى عام ٢٠١٠، نظمت أول حدث خيرى لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات فى المجتمع.

The University Years

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

- سنوات الجامعة.

فى عام ٢٠١٢، ذهبت فريدة إلى الجامعة لدراسة العلوم الاجتماعية. وقد نظمت هنا حدثًا لجمع التبرعات لجمع الأموال لإنشاء ملعب جديد.

Working in Charities

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

- العمل فى الجمعيات الخيرية.

فى عام ٢٠١٧، بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة مجتمعية متطوعة فى القاهرة. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ساعدت الكثير من الناس. وفى عام ٢٠٢٠، قادت مشروع "الشباب يرد الجميل" فى ست مدن فى مصر. لقد كان ناجحًا جدًا لدرجة أنها فازت بجائزة "العاملة المجتمعية لعام ٢٠٢٠". واليوم تدير مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال.

2 Read the leaflet. How can you reduce waste?

اقرأ المنشور. كيف يمكنك تقليل النفايات:

Ways to Be a Good Citizen

There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.

طرق لتكون مواطنًا صالحًا:

- هناك الكثير من الطرق التى يمكنك من خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعك:

Respect Others: Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.

احترام الآخرين:

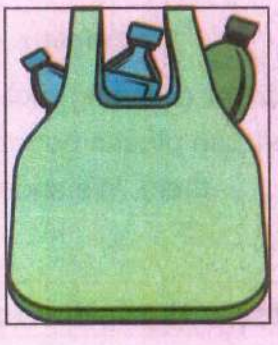
- كن مهذبًا ولطيفًا مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسنين أو المرضى. اتصل بجيرانك واسألهم كيف يمكنك المساعدة. يمكنك عرض القيام بالتسوق أو القيام بمهام لهم فى المنزل.



Protect the Environment: Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!

حماية البيئة:

- تقليل النفايات ومساعدة البيئة. لا تستخدم الأكياس البلاستيكية أو الزجاجات البلاستيكية. إذا كان لديك زجاجات بلاستيكية فى المنزل قم بإعادة تدويرها. دعونا نكون جميعًا مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكانًا أفضل!



Help the Community: Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

ساعد المجتمع:

- تطوع فى حدث خيرى محلى أو ساعد فى مشروع مجتمعى. العمل التطوعى ليس مملًا. إنه شيق. سوف تتفاجئ بمدى استمتاعك به.





Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My family _____ a restaurant in Zagazig. الشرقية - ديرب نجم (2024)
   a play b walk c run d study
2. Let's all be good _____ and make the world better. القاهرة - الوايلي (2024)
   a charity b trains c cities d citizens
3. Fareeda Hassan won the "2020 Community Worker" _____.
   a cup b award c pen d track
4. We are _____ money for charity. سوهاج - طهطا (2024)
   a raising b rising c lending d stealing
5. If you have plastic bottles at home, _____ them. المنوفية - شبين الكوم (2024)
   a eat b write c recycle d cook
6. Volunteering isn't boring. It's _____. كفر الشيخ - مطوبس (2024)
   a bad b interesting c boring d excited

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

citizens - recycle - produce - look after

I am a part of a charity that helps the environment.We should reduce waste and we shouldn't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, ① _____ them. We should ② _____ the old people. It aims to make us good ③ _____.

3 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- let's visit cairo. _____

2- what award did she win _____

4 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Help your community

Guiding phrases

start vegetable garden - help clean trash from rivers

_____

_____

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Review

Key vocabulary



grabber
خطّاف - لاقط القمامة



nature camera
كاميرا الطبيعة (تستخدم فى البرية)



multi-grip
قبضة متعددة



controller
جهاز تحكم



handle
مقبض

donate	يتبّرع
participate	يشترك / يشارك
joysticks	عصا التحكم فى الألعاب
confidence	ثقة
fundraising	جمع تبرعات / اعانات مالية
reward	مكافأة
jealous	غيور / حسود
social sciences	علوم إجتماعية

help out	يشارك فى حمل العبء
start up	يُؤسِّس / ينشئ
sparrow	عصفور صغير
give back	يرد الجميل
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا / يختلط مع الناس
fundraiser	جامع التبرعات
award	جائزة
citizen	مواطن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
start يبدأ	started
support يدعم	supported
volunteer يتطوع	volunteered
train يتدرب	trained

Irregular أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
choose يختار	chose
grow يزرع	grew
teach يعلم / يدرس	taught
put يضع	put

decide	يقرر	decided	held
donate	يتبرع	donated	showed
protect	يحمى	protected	learned/ learnt
collect	يجمع	collected	broke
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed	grew up
reach	يصل	reached	led
participate	يشارك	participated	ran
raise	يجمع	raised	won
reduce	يقلل	reduced	

hold	يمسك
show	يوضح
learn	يتعلم
break	يكسر
grow up	يكبر
lead	يقود
run	يدير
win	يفوز

Language focus — قواعد لغوية

A Infinitives of purpose — استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

◉ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للتعبير عن الهدف من القيام بفعل شئ أو ذكر السبب.

- We wear gloves to protect our hands.

◉ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للإجابة عن السؤال البادئ بكلمة (Why).

- Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?
  To protect my hands.

◉ ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (for) للتعبير عن الغرض بشرط أن يأتى بعدها اسم:

- We stopped at the café for a drink = to have a drink.

B Adverbs

1 Adjective صفة

◉ الصفة تصف الاسم.

- My daughter is beautiful.

2 Adverb حال (ظرف)

◉ الظرف (الحال) يصف الفعل.

- My daughter is speaking beautifully.

◉ يتكون الحال غالبًا بإضافة (-ly) إلى الصفة.

- slow → slowly
- They walked slowly.

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (-ily).

- angry → angrily
- happy → happily
- He shouted angrily.

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(le) يتم حذف (e) وإضافة (y).

- possible → possibly
- gentle → gently

Position of the adverb مكان الحال فى الجملة

- Our team is playing badly.
- She quickly learned the rules.
- She learned the rules quickly.
- She learned quickly the rules.(XX)

◉ يأتى الحال عادة بعد الفعل.
◉ يمكن أن يأتى الحال قبل الفعل ومفعوله.
◉ يمكن أن يأتى الحال بعد الفعل ومفعوله.
◉ لا يأتى الحال بين الفعل ومفعوله.



Write a text of FIFTY (50) words

Answers to paragraphs / emails

Lesson 1

A volunteering project I did

1 Last week, I decided to help our neighbors to clean our streets. We called our neighbors in the streets next to us. We all agreed to collect money to buy tools for cleaning and trees to plant them in front of our houses. We were happy because little children participated in this project, too.

Lessons 4&5

Help your community

2 At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. There are a lot of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people volunteer to help clean trash from the river, so that animal habitats are safer.

Al-Azhar Test

Video games

3 I like playing video games on my laptop. I spend many hours playing games with my friends. We played games at the weekend. We play games after we finish our homework. We have fun and enjoy eating popcorn and drinking juice.

Test - Unit 11

4

New Message		
To	salma@hotmail.com	Cc Bcc
From	menna@gmail.com	
Subject	How to be a good citizen	

Dear Salma,
How are you and your family? I read a leaflet yesterday about how to be a good citizen. We should be polite and kind to our neighbors especially the old people. We should reduce waste and help the environment by planting trees. We should work together to make the world a better place. See you Soon.
Yours,
Menna

Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

joysticks - video - together - happy - controller

Mom : Why are you ❶ _____?

Amira : I'm happy because I bought a new ❷ _____.

Mom : Why did you buy it?

Amira : To play ❸ _____ games .

Mom : What are these parts?

Amira : They are the ❹ _____.

Mom : Let's play ❺ _____.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	good	slow	bad	quickly	_____
2	protect	visit	learn	ate	_____
3	how	were	where	what	_____
4	zoo	park	school	study	_____
5	Reem	Mona	Ali	Ola	_____

3 Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. To _____, is to take part in something.

a participate b support c donate d give

2. People _____ to help clean trash from the river.

a slept b cut c volunteered d put

3. My father _____ thousands of pounds to charity.

a bought b lent c donated d played

4. The older brother was _____. He wanted to take his brother's house.

a quiet b polite c kind d jealous

5. We decided to _____ up children charity.

a end b start c play d read

6. I bought eggs and flour _____ a cake.

a making b to make c to making d make

7. Fareeda was born _____ 1994.

a on b in c at d of

8. She _____ learned the rules.

a bad b quicker c slow d quickly

9. She speaks French _____.

a good b bad c well d happy

10. **A:** Why are you buying this book? **B:** _____ it.

a To reading b Read c To read d From reading

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Salah was 18 years old and went to the city school. He was good at football, so he was in his school team. He always played very well. He scored a lot of goals. Salah's grandparents usually came to see him when there was a match, and they were always happy when other people said "Your grandson plays very well". Salah's school wishes to win this match to win the cup.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. When did Salah's grandparents feel happy?

_____

2. How old was Salah?

_____

3. What sport was Salah good at?

_____

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. Salah's _____ come to see him play.

a parents b friends c grandparents d family

5. Salah wishes to win _____.

a the concert b the cup c the party d the glasses

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. do - you - gloves - **Why** - wear? الإسماعيلية - القصاصين (2024)

2. a charity - for - **Fareeda** - children - runs.

3. new - my - games - **That's** - console. دمياط - كفر سعد (2024)

4. **We** - help out - on - should - project - a community.

5. after - the class - **I** - school - teach. السويس - الأربعين (2024)

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Video games

laptop - spend - joysticks - friends - popcorn

Test on Unit 11



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I volunteer to help _____ people.

a young b bad c adult d old

2. Their hands aren't _____ enough.

a weak b high c long d strong

3. They use a _____ to take off the tops.

a controller b button c multi-grip d joysticks

4. It's really _____ to use.

a easy b bad c difficult d different

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. To "_____" is to do an activity without taking money. المنيا - مغاغة (2024)

a volunteer b sell c scare d organize

2. "_____" means feeling unhappy because someone has what you want.

a Happy b Jealous c Nervous d Pleased

3. Our neighbour _____ many cameras in our street. سوهاج - البلينا (2024)

a grew b killed c installed d stayed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: القاهرة - المرج (2024)

rise - participate - volunteer - teach

I'm Remas. At school, we started a project to help our community. We raise money to save the roads for disabled people.We can ① _____ to plant trees along the streets. Clever students ② _____ the class after school to help them pass exams. We want everyone to ③ _____ in this project.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Volunteering is very important for helping the community. When you volunteer, you learn many important life skills. You learn how to socialize and talk to people wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. **Fundraising** helps the charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to where you live. My advice to teenagers is to volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about "_____".
   - a Animal habitats
   - b Coral reefs
   - c Volunteering
   - d Metal

2. The underlined word "**Fundraising**" means _____.
   - a selling clothes
   - b buying food
   - c giving food
   - d collecting money

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How can volunteering help teenagers? _____
4. Summarize the text in one sentence. _____
5. What does volunteering give you? _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. learn - things - Volunteers - many - important. (2024) المنوفية - منوف

_____

2. university - is - the - studying - at - She. (2024) قنا - قوص

_____

3. heard - two people - I - shouting - in the street - angrily. (2024) كفر الشيخ - قلين

_____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Youssef is fantastic at football. He plays football _____ **(good)**.

الإسكندرية - المنتزة (2024)

2. I buy a bottle of water _____ **(for drink)** it.

قنا - قوص (2024)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. why do the old people use a multi-grip

_____

2. let's be all good citizens

_____

8 Write an email of about fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Salma about how to be a good citizen, your name is Menna and your email address is menna@gmail.com and your friend's email address is salma@hotmailcom.

مجاب اخر الوحدة

the old people - plant trees

New Message	
To	..... Cc Bcc
From	.....
Subject	.....

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Unit 12

Fiction Reader

Atemu And Amethyst

إتيمو و اماثيست



Objectives of the Reader

أهداف القصة

1. Read, understand and enjoy a fiction text. ١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ويستمتع بنص خيالي.
2. Comprehension and critical thinking questions.

٢ - يجيب الطالب عن أسئلة الفهم والتفكير النقدي.

3. Identifying who said what from the story. ٣ - يحدد الطالب من قال الجملة من القصة.
4. Discuss the story and the moral. ٤ - يناقش الطالب القصة والدرس الاخلاقى بها .
5. Notes on what happened next. ٥ - يدون الطالب ملاحظات عما سيحدث بعد ذلك بالقصة.
6. Reading, understanding, and appreciating a story.

٦ - يقرأ الطالب القصة ويفهمها ويقدر الرسالة التى بها.

7. Being merciful to animals. ٧ - يتعلم الطالب اهمية الرفق بالحيوان.
8. Appreciating Ancient Egyptian history. ٨ - يقدر الطالب التاريخ المصري القديم.



Characters of the Reader

شخصيات القصة

استمع إلى المفردات:



Nedjem
نجم



Atemu
أتيمو



Amethyst
اماثيست (الحمامة)



Atemu's Father
والد أتيمو



Atemu's Mom
والدة أتيمو



Nedjem's cat
قطة نجم



Mr Akhon
السيد آخون

Picture Dictionary
قاموس الصور





amethyst
جمشت (حجر كريم)



carpenter
نجار



carrier pigeon
حمام زاجل



coo
يهدل (صوت الحمام)



dome
قبة



dovecotes
ابراج الحمام



jewelry
مجوهرات



order
طلب/طلبية



scribe
كاتب



yard
فناء

The Reader
القصة

استمع إلى المفردات:

1



Once upon a time, a long, long, time ago, a boy called Atemu lived in the Nile Delta. His home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and his big sister, Nedjem. Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school. His father worked as a carpenter[1]. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved animals, especially[2] birds. He liked to watch the birds that came into his yard[3]. Every day, Atemu gave some grain[4] to the birds. He enjoyed watching them eat. Often, his sister's cat came into the yard and watched the birds, too. It sometimes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

يحكى أن منذ زمن بعيد جدا عاش صبي يدعى أتيمو في دلتا النيل. كان منزله في قرية صغيرة، وكان يعيش مع والديه وأخته الكبرى نجم. كان أتيمو في الثانية عشرة من عمره لكنه لم يذهب إلى المدرسة. وكان والده يعمل نجارا. كان يُعلم أتيمو كيفية صنع الأشياء من الخشب.

أحب أتيمو الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور. كان يحب مشاهدة الطيور التي تأتي إلى فناءه. كان يعطي أتيمو الطيور بعض الحبوب كل يوم. لقد استمتع بمشاهدتهم وهم يأكلون. وفي كثير من الأحيان كانت قطة أخته تأتي إلى الفناء وتراقب الطيور أيضًا. وكانت أحيانًا تقفز على الطيور لكنها لم تمسك بها أبدًا. لقد كانت قطة بطيئة جدًا.

1- carpenter	نجار	2- especially	خاصة	3- yard	فناء	4- grain	حبوب

2



One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange[1] noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge flock[2] of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby[3].

"Mom! Mom!" shouted Atemu. "There are so many birds! Can I go and see them?" His Mom came out of the house and looked. "Wow!" she said. "Yes, you can go." She filled a bowl[4] with grain. "Here, you are," she said kindly. "You can take this for them."

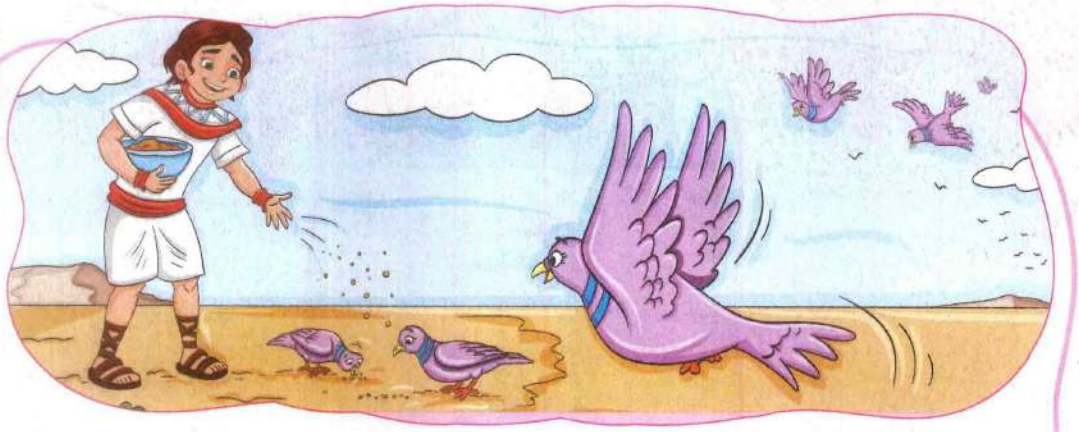
في أحد أيام شهر أكتوبر، كان أتيمو في الفناء عندما سمع ضجيجًا غريبًا. نظر للأعلى ورأى شيئاً مذهلاً. وكان سرب ضخم من الطيور يحلق فوق قريته. كانوا يهبطون إلى حقل قريب.

صاح أتيمو "أمي! أمي!". "هناك الكثير من الطيور! هل يمكنني الذهاب ورؤيتهم؟"

خرجت والدته من المنزل ونظرت للطيور وقالت "رائع!". "نعم، يمكنك الذهاب." وملأت وعاءً بالحبوب وقالت بلطف: "تفضل". "يمكنك أن تأخذ هذا لهم."

1- strange	غريب	2- flock	سرب	3- a field nearby	حقل قريب	4- bowl	وعاء /سلطانية

3



When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe[1] his eyes. There were thousands of birds. Every one of them was light gray, with shiny green feathers[2] on its neck and purple feathers on its chest[3]. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds.

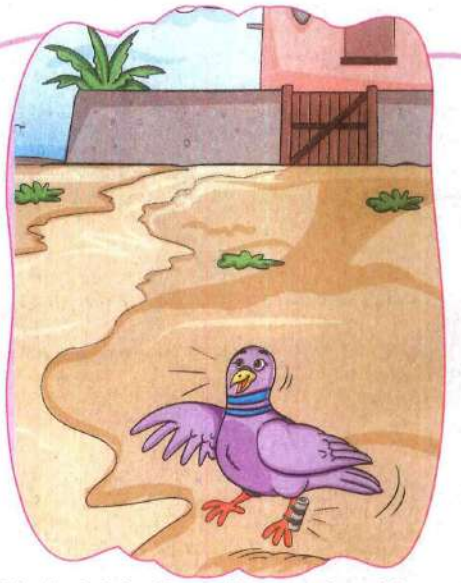
Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They ate it hungrily[4]. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.

وعندما وصل أتيمو إلى الحقول، لم يصدق عينيه. كان هناك الآلاف من الطيور. كانوا جميعا ذات الوان رمادية فاتحة، مع ريش أخضر لامع على رقابهم وريش أرجواني على صدورهم. كانت طيور جميلة ! كانوا ينادون بعضهم البعض بأصوات ممتده.

ألقى أتيمو الحبوب للطيور. أكلوها بنهم. ثم فجأة طاروا إلى السماء مرة أخرى. شاهدهم أتيمو وهم يذهبون.

1- believe يصدق	2- feathers ريش	3- chest صدر	4- hungrily بنهم

4



Then he noticed[1] a bird at his feet. It was looking at him. "Coo[2], coo, coo, coo," it went.

"I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu.

"Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird.

The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different[3] too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had yellow beaks[4], but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes[5] on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too.

Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him. Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was following[6] him!

"Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.

ثم لاحظ أتيمو طائرًا اسفل قدميه. كان ينظر إليه واصدر صوت الهديل.

قال أتيمو: "ليس لدي أي حبوب أيها الطائر". واصدر الطائر صوت الهديل.

كان الصوت مختلفًا عن الطيور الأخرى. بدا الطائر مختلفًا أيضًا. أولا كان أكبر. أما الطيور الأخرى فكانت مناقيرها صفراء، أما منقار هذا الطائر فكان لونه رمادي داكن. وكان لهذا الطائر أيضًا خطوط على جناحيه. استطاع أتيمو أن يرى شيئًا غريبًا على ساقه أيضًا.

عندها فقط سمع أتيمو والدته تناديه. مشى أتيمو بسرعة لكنه كان يسمع الطائر خلفه. لقد كان يتبعه!

قال أتيمو "لماذا لا تطير مع أصدقائك؟"، ولكن الطائر كان يهدل فقط.

1- noticed	لاحظ	2- Coo	صوت هديل الحمامة	3- looked different	بدا مختلفا
4- beaks	مناقير	5- stripes	خطوط	6- was following	كان يتبع

5



When Atemu got to his yard, the bird came in after him. He watched it while(1) he cleaned vegetables for dinner.

Then he saw Nedjem's cat. It was watching the bird, too. Suddenly(2), the cat jumped on the bird! But the bird didn't fly away. Nedjem ran and picked up the cat.

"You should catch(3) rats and snakes, not birds!" she said. "What's wrong with that bird? It can't fly," said their mother. "Is it hurt(4)?"

"Maybe!" said Atemu. "It didn't fly with the other birds." Atemu walked to the bird. When he touched its left wing(5), it made a quiet sound.

"I think its wing is hurt," said Atemu.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى فناء منزله، تبعه الطائر. شاهده الطائر بينما كان اتيمو ينظف الخضار لتناول العشاء.

ثم رأى قطة نجم. وكانت القطة تراقب الطائر أيضاً. وفجأة قفزت القطة على الطائر! لكن الطير لم يطير بعيدا. ركضت نجم والتقطت القطة.

قالت له " يجب أن تصطاد الفئران والثعابين، وليس الطيور!. قالت والدتهم "مما يشكو هذا الطائر؟" "لا يمكنه الطيران". "هل اصيب ؟" قال أتيمو "ربما!". واكمل "لم يطير مع الطيور الأخرى." مشى أتيمو إلى الطائر. وعندما لمس جناحه الأيسر، أصدر الطائر صوتًا خافتا. قال أتيمو: "أعتقد أن جناحه أصيب".

1- while	اثناء	2- Suddenly	فجاءه	3- catch	يصطاد
4- hurt	مصاب	5- its left wing	جناحه الايسر		

6



When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird. "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg." "Poor bird![1]" said his father. "What is that?" He took the object[2] from the bird's leg.

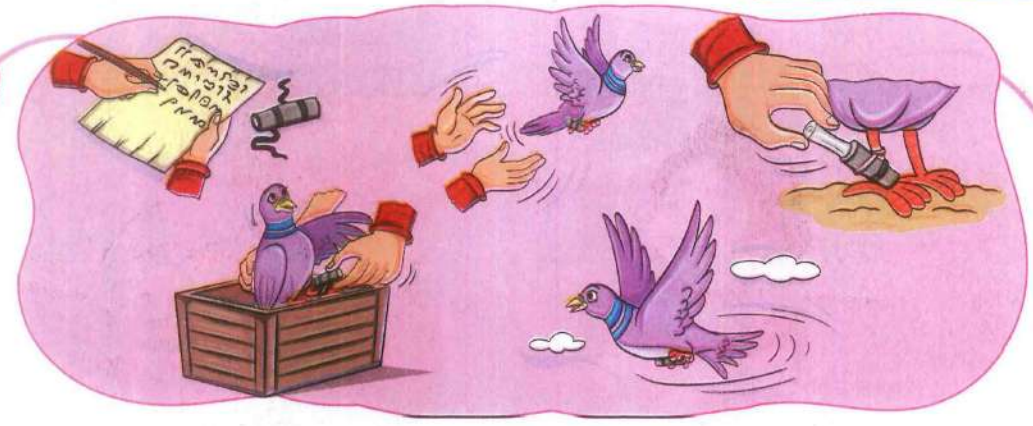
It was a very small wooden box[3]. Atemu's father opened it. A piece of papyrus paper[4] was inside. "It's a message![5]" said Atemu's father. "This bird is a carrier pigeon[6]." "What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

عندما عاد والد أتيمو إلى المنزل، أراه أتيمو الطائر. فقال والده "لديه جناح مصاب، وفي رجله شيء». "يا له من طائر مسكين!". "ما هذا؟" أخذ الشيء من ساق الطائر.

لقد كان صندوقًا خشبيًا صغيرًا جدًا. فتحه والد أتيمو. وكانت هناك قطعة من ورق البردي بالداخل. قال والد أتيمو "إنها رسالة!". "هذا الطائر من الحمام الزاجل." فسأل أتيمو "ما هو الحمام الزاجل؟".

1- Poor bird	طائر مسكين	2- object	شئ	3- wooden box	صندوق خشبى
4- papyrus paper	ورق البردى	5- message	رسالة	6- carrier pigeon	حمام زاجل

7



"It's a bird which carries messages," said his father. "Important people in the city keep[1] pigeons. The pigeons learn where they live. Then people take the pigeons to new places.

When there is news from that place, they attach[2] the message to the pigeon. It flies home and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons."

"That's very clever![3]" said Atemu. "So, what does this message say?"
"I don't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe[4] ".

قال والده: "إنه طائر يحمل الرسائل". "تقوم الأشخاص المهمة في المدينة بتربية الحمام. يتعلم الحمام أين يعيشون. ثم يأخذ الناس الحمام إلى أماكن جديدة. وعندما يكون هناك أخبار من ذلك المكان، يربطوا الرسالة بالطائر. يطير إلى المنزل ويحمل الرسالة. ولهذا السبب يطلق عليهم الحمام الزاجل."

قال أتيمو "هذا شئ ذكي جدًا!". "إذن ماذا تقول هذه الرسالة؟" قال والده: "لا أعرف". "سوف آخذها إلى صديقي الكاتب."

1- keep	يربى	2- attach	يربط
3- clever	ماهر / ذكى	4- scribe	كاتب

8



Atemu looked after[1] the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily[2].

Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home.

"Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu. "Yes," said his father. "The message was for a jewelry merchant[3] in the city, Mr Akhon. I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order[4] for a lot of gold jewelry[5] from the capital[6] city. It was very important for him."

"Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week."

"Yes, father," Atemu said quietly. For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again.

Every morning, it flew to the roof [7] where Atemu slept and cooed to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend.

"I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly.

اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. صنع لها طاولة عالية لا تستطيع القطة القفز عليها. وأعطاها الماء والحبوب وتحدث معها. هدلت الحمامة بسعادة.

ذهب والد أتيمو إلى المدينة. وبعد ثلاثة أيام عاد إلى المنزل.

قال أتيمو "هل تحدثت مع الكاتب؟". قال والده: "نعم". كانت الرسالة موجهة إلى تاجر مجوهرات في المدينة اسمه السيد آخون. أخذت له الرسالة وكان سعيدًا جدًا! كانت تحمل الرسالة طلبًا للكثير من المجوهرات الذهبية من العاصمة. لقد كان الأمر مهمًا للغاية بالنسبة له."

"يريد السيد آخون أيضًا حمامته. سنأخذها إليه الأسبوع المقبل."

قال أتيمو بهدوء: "نعم يا أبي". وفي الأسبوع التالي، اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. بدأت الحمامة في الطيران مرة أخرى.

وفي كل صباح، كانت تطير إلى السطح حيث كان ينام أتيمو وكانت تهدل له. كان أتيمو سعيدًا جدًا بالصداقة الجديدة للحمامة.

قال لها بصوت خافت: "لا أريدك أن تعودي إلى المنزل".

1- looked after اعتنى بـ	2- happily بسعادة	3- jewelry merchant تاجر مجوهرات	4- order طلبية
5- gold jewelry مجوهرات ذهبية	6- capital عاصمة	7- roof سطح المنزل	

9



The next Sunday, Atemu and his father got into their boat to go to the city. The pigeon sat on Atemu's shoulder[1].

Atemu was excited[2] because it was his first trip[3] to the city, but he was also sad. It was his last day with the pigeon.

But he forgot about that when he saw the houses of the city. There were so many and some of the houses were very big! Some houses had white domes[4] with many small holes[5] in the yard or on the roof.

"What are they?" asked Atemu.

"Those are dovecotes[6]." said Atemu's father. "Dovecotes are special houses[7] for pigeons."

وفي يوم الأحد التالي، ركب أتيمو ووالده قاربهم للذهاب إلى المدينة. جلست الحمامة على كتف أتيمو.

كان أتيمو متحمسًا لأنها كانت رحلته الأولى إلى المدينة، لكنه كان حزينًا أيضًا. كان يومه الأخير مع الحمامة.

لكنه نسي ذلك عندما رأى منازل المدينة. كانت كثيرة وكانت بعض المنازل كبيرة جدًا! وكانت لبعض المنازل قباب بيضاء بها العديد من الثقوب الصغيرة في الفناء أو على السطح.

سأل أتيمو "ما هذه؟" قال والد أتيمو "هذه ابراج الحمام." . "ابراج الحمام هي بيوت خاصة للحمام."

1- shoulder	كتف	2- excited	متحمس	3- trip	رحلة	4- domes	قباب
5- holes	فتحات	6- dovecotes	ابراج الحمام	7- special houses	بيوت خاصة		

10



Finally [1], they arrived at a large house. "We're here!" Atemu's father said.

A smiling[2] man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jewelry. Atemu knew it was the merchant.

"Welcome to my home!" Mr Akhon said. "Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer[3]. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is Amethyst[4] – because her feathers are the same color[5] as these purple stones[6]. She is my best bird!"

"She was hurt," said Atemu.

"I see," said the merchant. Can she fly now?"

"Yes," said Atemu. "She's much better.[7]"

"Come with me then. I'll show you where she lives."

وأخيرا وصلوا إلى منزل كبير. قال والد أتيمو. "ها قد وصلنا!"

جاء رجل مبتسم لمقابلتهم. كان يرتدي الكثير من الحلى. عرف أتيمو أنه التاجر.

" قال السيد آخون أهلا وسهلا بك في منزلي!". "شكرا جزيلاً لك على العثور على رسالتي. لقد كانت رسالة من أهم عملائي (زبائني) . وشكرا لرعاية حمامتي. اسمها اماثيست - لأن ريشها من نفس لون هذه الحجارة الأرجوانية. إنها أفضل الطيور لدي!

قال أتيمو: "لقد أصيبت".

قال التاجر: "فهمت". هل يمكنها الطيران الآن؟"

قال أتيمو: "نعم". "إنها أفضل بكثير."

"تعال معي إذن. سأريك أين تعيش ".

1- Finally اخيرا	2- smiling مبتسم	3-customer زبون	4-Amethyst اماثيست (اسم حجر كريم)
5- the same color نفس اللون	6-purple stones احجار ارجوانية اللون	7- much better افضل بكثير	

11



Atemu and his father **followed**[1] Mr Akhon into his yard. **At one side**,[2] there were three tall dovecotes. "My birds will come home soon," the merchant said.

"How many do you have?" said Atemu.

"Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon. "They have a lot of babies, so I don't know **exactly**[3]."

Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so **cute**[4]!" Atemu said.

"It's time to go, **son**[5]," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird."

تبع أتيمو ووالده السيد آخون إلى فناء منزله. على جانب واحد، كان هناك ثلاثة ابراج حمام طويلة. قال التاجر: "ستعود طيوري إلى المنزل قريبًا".

سأله أتيمو كم لديك من الحمام ؟.

"أوه، كثيرا." قال السيد آخون. "لديهم الكثير من الصغار، لذلك لا أعرف العدد بالضبط."

نظر أتيمو إلى الحمامة. كان بإمكانه رؤية بعض الطيور الصغيرة. قال أتيمو "إنهم لطيفون جدًا!"

قال والد أتيمو: "حان وقت الرحيل يا بني". "قل وداعًا للطائر."

1- followed	تبع	2- At one side	على جانب واحد	3- exactly	بالضبط
4- cute	لطيف/جميل	5- son	ابن		

12



"Goodbye Amethyst," said Atemu, softly. He touched her purple feathers, and she cooed. He was very sad, but he tried to smile.

The merchant was a kind man. He spoke to Atemu.

"You say Amethyst got well again, but she didn't fly home."

"Yes" said Atemu. "Well, I think she'll be happy to stay with you now. "

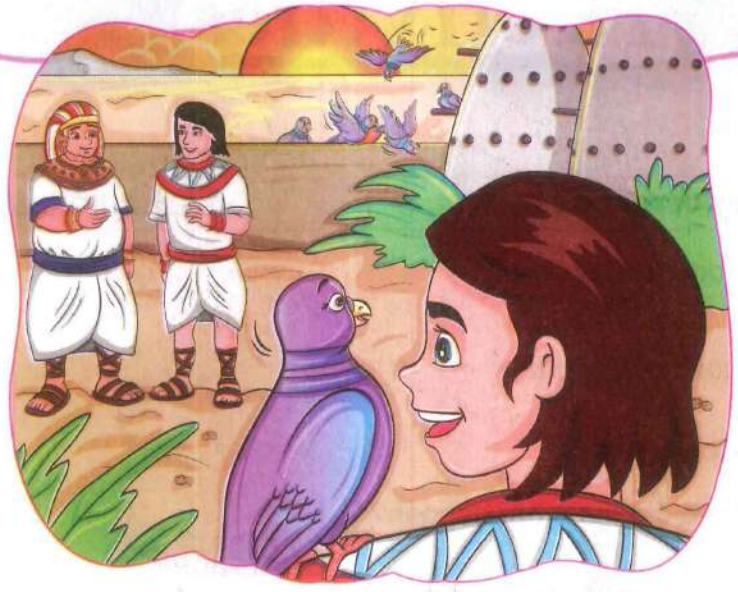
قال أتيمو بصوت حزين: "وداعا يا اماثيست". لمس ريشها الأرجواني، فهدلت. كان حزينًا جدًا، لكنه حاول أن يبتسم.

وكان التاجر رجلاً طيباً. و تحدث إلى أتيمو.

"أنت تقول أن اماثيست تحسنت مرة أخرى، لكنها لم تعد إلى المنزل."

قال أتيمو "نعم". "حسنًا، أعتقد أنها ستكون سعيدة بالبقاء معك الآن."

13



"Oh wow!" said Atemu. "Thank you so much." He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder.

"She'll need a small house," said Mr Akhon.

"I can make one!" said Atemu. "I'm learning to be a carpenter."

"I'll help you," said his dad.

" قال " أتيمو: أوه رائع!". "شكراً جزيلاً." نظر إلى اماثيست، وقفزت على كتفه قال آخون: "ستحتاج إلى منزل صغير".

قال أتيمو : " أستطيع أن أصنع واحدة!". "أنا أتعلم أن أكون نجارا" "قال والده: " سوف أساعدك.

On the boat home, Atemu's father said. "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!" Atemu said. "Yes. How can I thank him?"

"You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter[1] for you," said his father.

"Good idea!" said Atemu! "And Amethyst can take it to him!"

وقال الوالد لأتيمو وهما على متن القارب متجهان إلى المنزل. "السيد آخون رجل طيب للغاية. هو أعطاك أفضل طائر عنده! قال أتيمو. "نعم. كيف يمكنني أن أشكره؟

قال والده: "يمكنك أن تطلب من الكاتب أن يكتب لك رسالة شكر".

قال أتيمو "إفكره جيده!" ويمكن لاماثيست أن يأخذها إليه."

1- a thank you letter خطاب شكر

Lesson 1 Activities

1 Circle the correct answer: ضع دائرة حول الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. What is the story mainly about?

   a. a cat that can't catch birds

   b. a boy who loves birds

2. When and where did the story happen?

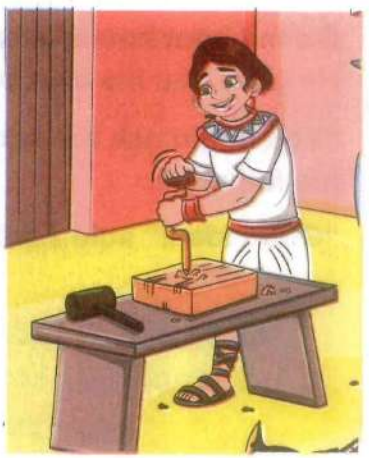
   a. in the Nile Delta, in Ancient Egypt

   b. in Cairo, a few years ago

2 What did you learn about Atemu and his family? Write and answer T (True) or F (False).

ماذا تعلمت عن عائلة اتيمو؟ أكتب صح T أو خطأ F.

1. Atemu lives in a big town. ☐
2. Nedjem is Atemu's older sister. ☐
3. Atemu is ten years old. ☐
4. Atemu goes to school. ☐
5. Atemu's father makes things from wood. ☐
6. Atemu has a cat. ☐



3 Complete the paragraph with the past simple form of the verbs.

أكمل الفقرة بافعال فى صيغة الماضى البسيط.

Atemu loved birds. Every day, birds ❶_____ (come) into his yard, and Atemu ❷_____ (give) them grain. His sister's cat watched the birds, too, but it never ❸_____ (catch) them. One day, Atemu ❹_____ (hear) a strange noise in the sky. A lot of birds were flying into a field near his home. Atemu went to the field and ❺_____ (throw) grain to the birds. The birds ❻_____ (eat) the grain and then ❼_____ (fly) away. But one bird was different. It stayed on the ground.

4 Complete the paragraph. Check your answers in the story.

أكمل الفقرة وتأكد من اجاباتك فى القصة.

All of the birds were light gray, with green feathers on their ❶_____ and ❷_____ feathers on their chests. But one bird was a little different. It was ❸_____ than the other birds. They had ❹_____ beaks, but its beak was ❺_____. It also sounded different. The ❻_____ the other birds made was a long "whoo", but it went "coo coo". It had ❼_____ on its wings, but they didn't.



Lesson 2 Activities



1 Answer the questions: أجب عن الاسئلة:

1. Why couldn't the bird fly?
2. What did the bird have on its leg?
3. What kind of bird is it?
4. Who is Mr Akhon?
5. What will Atemu and his father do next week?

2 Complete the sentences with the words: أكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات:

home - leg - news - orders - pigeons

1. Important people in Ancient Egypt often kept carrier _____.
2. Carrier pigeons can learn where their _____ is.
3. Carrier pigeons often carried _____ from one place to another city.
4. People used carrier pigeons to send _____ to merchants.
5. People attached their messages to the pigeon's _____.

3 Who says this in the story? Read and write the names:

من قال ذلك فى القصة؟ اقرأ وأكتب الاسماء:

Atemu - Atemu's father - Atemu's mother - Nedjem

1. "I think its wing is hurt," _____.
2. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" _____.
3. "It can't fly," _____.
4. "That's very clever!" _____.
5. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe." _____.

Lesson 3 Activities



1 Check ALL the correct answers: ضع علامة ✓ على الاجابات الصحيحة:

1. Why did Mr Akhon say thank you to Atemu?

- ☐ Atemu helped his business.
- ☐ Atemu looked after his pigeon.
- ☐ Atemu was feeling sad.

2. Why did Mr Akhon give Atemu the pigeon?

- ☐ The pigeon couldn't fly now.
- ☐ Mr Akhon knew Atemu wanted the pigeon.
- ☐ Mr Akhon wanted to thank Atemu for helping him.

3. Why did Atemu's father say Mr Akhon was a good man?

- ☐ Mr Akhon didn't have to give Amethyst to Atemu.
- ☐ Mr Akhon made a lot of beautiful jewelry.
- ☐ Mr Akhon gave Amythest to Atemu.

2 Complete the puzzle with these words from the story. What's the word in yellow?

أكمل اللغز بالكلمات من القصة؟ ما الكلمة المظللة بالاصفر

amethyst - carpenter - coo - dome - jewelry - order - pigeons - yard

1 

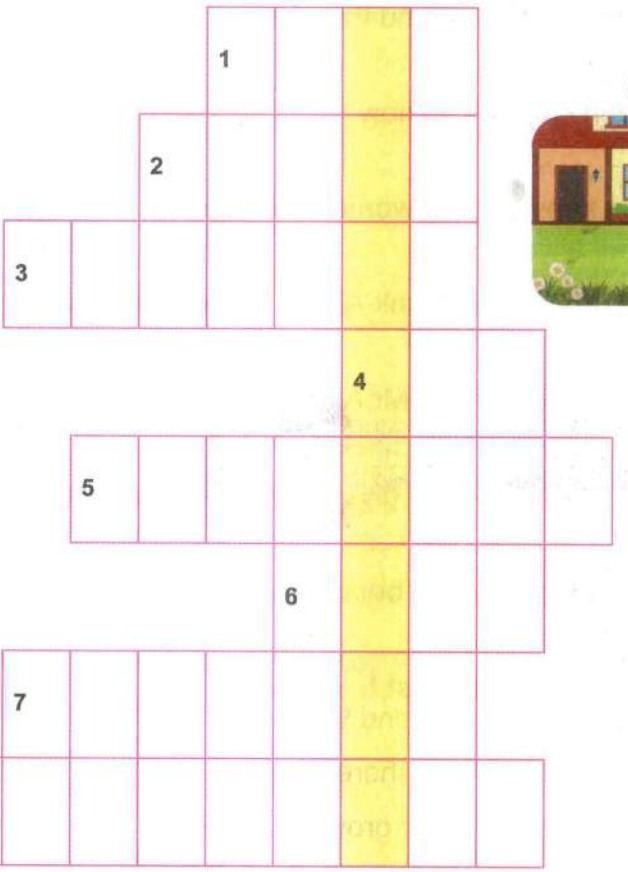
2 

3 

4 

5 

6 



7 

8 

Review 4

Listening and Reading

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Reader: I love going on vacation, but I think eco-tourism is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography(1) today and our teacher explained(2) it really well. For example, you mustn't throw litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals in their natural habitats(3). However, people mustn't get too close to(4) the birds, because it can make them frightened. It's important to speak and move quietly when you are near wildlife(5). I think people must be careful(6) not to damage(7) the environment when they travel.

Arabic Meaning

١- جغرافيا
٢- وضح/فسر
٣- بيئات
٤- قريب من
٥- حياة برية
٦- حريص/حذر
٧- يتلف/يدمر

Listen and look: استمع وانظر:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Narrator:1

Reader A: This is our community garden(1), where we plant seeds(2) to grow fruit and vegetables. The fruit and vegetables are then shared with people in the local(3) area who can't buy or grow their own.

Narrator:2

Reader B: A good way to help children who are in hospital(4) is to read with them. Not only is it fun(5) for them, but it can actually help them to fell better.

Arabic Meaning

١- حديقة مجتمعية
٢- بذور
٣- محلي
٤- مستشفى
٥- متعة/مرح





Narrator:3

Reader C: Last year, we started a "Plant a tree" project(6) for our local park. Every new tree has sponsors(7). The sponsors are people who pay some money(8) to help look after the tree. The more sponsors we have, the more trees we can plant. This year, we can buy lots of trees because we did so well last year.

Narrator:4

Reader D: When you volunteer(9) at a food bank(10), you can sort or make food for people who don't have enough to eat. It's a great way to help others, and volunteering for a charity(11) like this can be good for your well-being, too.

٦- مشروع
٧- راعى/ممول
٨- نقود
٩- يتطوع
١٠- بنك الطعام
١١- جمعية خيرية





Read the story about "The little Red Hen":

The little Red Hen

Once upon a time(1) there was little red hen who really liked to work. Every day she planted seeds in her beautiful garden, and waited for her plants to grow. She had three great friends: a mouse, a cat, and a dog, but all three of them were very lazy! One day, the little red hen was really tired, so she asked the mouse, the cat and the dog to help her plant some wheat. They all said "No!" A month later, the wheat grew tall and the hen wanted to cut the wheat. She asked the mouse, the cat and the dog. "Can you help?" They all said "No!" When she cut the wheat, the hen wanted to make some flour(2), but all three animals refused(3) to help. Finally, when the hen finished all her work, she felt very hungry and she decided to bake a big chocolate cake. No one wanted to help her bake the cake, but when the mouse, the cat, and the dog smelled the delicious cake, they wanted to eat with the hen! "Can we help you eat the cake, please, Hen?"

Arabic Meaning

١- ذات مرة
٢- دقيق
٣- رفض

General Revision on Units 10 & 11

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ١٠ - ١١

Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

(Unit 10)

eagle	نسر / عقاب
flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو (البشروس)
falcon	صقر
European countries	دولة أوربية
ideal	مثالي - نموذجي
respect	يحترم
protected area	منطقة محمية
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء
definitely	بالتأكيد
campsite	معسكر تخييم
eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
traditional vacation	عطلة تقليدية
oases	واحات
Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
distances	مسافات
warmer places	اماكن أكثر دفئًا
flocks	أسراب / مجموعات
the Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
snorkel	يسبح بأنبوب التنفس
shark	سمكة قرش
scientists	علماء

pelican	بجعة
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف (صائد السمك)
swift	طائر السمامة
sustainable	مستدام - صديق للبيئة
simple	بسيط
accommodation	اقامة
ads	اعلانات
chance	فرصة
bright-colored	ذات ألوان زاهية
sunset	غروب الشمس
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
successful	ناجح
sightseeing	المعالم السياحية
Europe	اوروبا
Northern	شمالى
water birds	طيور مائية
Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط
National Park	محمية وطنية
scuba dive	الغوص بأنبوب
wildlife watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية

(Unit 11)

controller	جهاز تحكم
handle	مقبض
help out	يشارك فى حمل العبء
start up	ينشئ / يُؤسِّس
sparrow	عصفور صغير
give back	يرد الجميل
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا / يختلط مع الناس
fundraiser	جامع التبرعات

grabber	لاقط القمامة - خطَّاف
nature camera	كاميرا الطبيعة (تستخدم فى البرية)
multi-grip	قبضة متعددة
donate	يتبرّع
participate	يشارك / يشترك
joysticks	عصا التحكم فى الألعاب
confidence	ثقة

fundraising	جمع تبرعات / اعانات مالية
reward	مكافأة
jealous	غيور / حسود

award	جائزة
citizen	مواطن
social sciences	علوم إجتماعية

Adjectives صفات

(Unit 10)

sensible	عاقل/ حكيم/ منطقى	fantastic	رائع
strange	غريب	certain	معين - محدد
popular	شعبي - مشهور	safe	آمن
traditional	تقليدي	close to	قريب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
(Unit 10)					
hatch	يفقس	hatched	fly	يطير	flew
dare	يجرؤ	dared	mean	يعنى	meant
flock	يتجمع/ يحتشد	flocked	build	يبني	built
succeed	ينجح	succeeded	catch	يصطاد	caught
sail	يبحر	sailed	take	يأخذ - يلتقط	took
damage	يدمر	damaged	hurt	يؤذي - يؤلم	hurt
protect	يحمي	protected	go down	تغرب	went down
respect	يحترم	respected	set off	ينطلق	set off
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	grow	يزرع	grew
provide	يزود / يمد	provided			
support	يساند / يدعم	supported			
explore	يستكشف	explored			
waste	يهدر	wasted			
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up			
(Unit 11)					
support	يدعم	supported	choose	يختار	chose
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	grow up	ينمو	grew up
train	يتدرب	trained	teach	يعلم / يدرس	taught

donate	يتبرع	donated	hold	يمسك	held
collect	يجمع	collected	show	يوضح	showed
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed	break	يكسر	broke
participate	يشارك	participated	grow	يكبر	grew
raise	يجمع	raised	lead	يقود	led
reduce	يقلل	reduced	run	يدير	ran

Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

(Unit 10)

must \ mustn't

◉ نستخدم must عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما يجب أن نفعله أو مهم أن نفعله

◉ نستخدم mustn't عندما لا يكون مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

- We must bring a tent.
- We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

◉ لاحظ يأتى بعد must / mustn't الفعل فى المصدر.

فاعل + must / mustn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

- You mustn't hurt birds.

◉ لا تأتى to بعد must / mustn't .

Question

كلمة استفهام + must + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل?

- What must we do to protect the environment?

◉ عند السؤال بـ هل....؟ نستخدم الصيغة التالية

Must + فاعل + مصدر الفعل + تكملة الجملة?

- Must they respect nature? - Yes, they must.
- Must she wear a dress? - No, she mustn't.

The first conditional (IF)

◉ نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن أشياء محتمل أن تحدث في المستقبل.

Form التكوين

If + فاعل + present simple + فاعل + will + مصدر الفعل

◉ تذكر يتكون المضارع البسيط من present simple :

(He / She / It + verb + s /es / ies)
(We / You / They + inf.)

- If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it.

◉ إذا جاءت (If) أول الجملة نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين وإذا جاءت فى المنتصف لا نضع فاصلة.

◉ لاحظ: عند النفي نستخدم التالي

If + { فاعل مفرد + doesn't + مصدر الفعل / فاعل جمع + don't + مصدر الفعل } + فاعل + won't + مصدر الفعل

- If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.
- If we don't get up early, we won't catch the bus.

(Unit 11)

A Infinitives of purpose استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

◉ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للتعبير عن الهدف من القيام بفعل شئ أو ذكر السبب.

- We wear gloves to protect our hands.

◉ نستخدم (مصدر الفعل to + inf) للإجابة عن السؤال البادئ بكلمة (Why).

- Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?

  To protect my hands.

◉ ملحوظة: يمكن استخدام (for) للتعبير عن الغرض بشرط أن يأتى بعدها اسم:

- We stopped at the café for a drink = to have a drink.

B Adverbs

1 Adverb حال (ظرف)

◉ الظرف (الحال) يصف الفعل.

- My daughter is speaking beautifully.

◉ يتكون الحال غالبًا بإضافة (-ly) إلى الصفة.

- slow → slowly
- They walked slowly.

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(y) مسبوقة بحرف ساكن تتحول إلى (-ily).

- angry → angrily
- happy → happily
- He shouted angrily.

◉ الصفات المنتهية بـ(le) يتم حذف (e) وإضافة (y).

- possible → possibly
- gentle → gently

Position of the adverb مكان الحال فى الجملة

◉ يأتى الحال عادة بعد الفعل.

- Our team is playing badly.

◉ يمكن أن يأتى الحال قبل الفعل ومفعوله.

- She quickly learned the rules.

◉ يمكن أن يأتى الحال بعد الفعل ومفعوله.

- She learned the rules quickly.

◉ لا يأتى الحال بين الفعل ومفعوله.

- She learned quickly the rules.(XX)

Test on Units (10 & 11)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ali likes writing _____.

a books b blogs c lessons d stories

2. The blog is about _____ habitats.

a birds b animals c lizard d lion

3. Animals need _____ place to live

a happy b safe c dangerous d bad

4. We should try to _____ animal habitats.

a damage b destroy c protect d see

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Migrating birds fly very _____ distances. الغربية - شرق طنطا (2024)

a bad b tall c small d long

2. My friend always _____ in the school activities. القاهرة - الزاوية (2024)

a looks after b takes part c gives away d decides

3. "_____" means spending time with people in a friendly way. الشرقية - مليا القمح (2024)

a Give back b Socialize c Waste d Look after

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: بني سويف - بني سويف (2024)

charities - confidence - teenagers - advice

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you ❶ _____. It's amazing to see how ❷ _____ grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps ❸ _____ get the money they need.

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is home to some of the most incredible historical sites in the world, like the Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. You can stand in the same place where pharaohs once walked and imagine the secrets of these ancient monuments. You can also explore the hieroglyphics on the temple walls. And don't forget to take a selfie with a mummy (don't worry, they're safely guarded in museums)!

But Egypt isn't just about the past; **it's** also a land of culture and friendly people. You can wander through markets, buy souvenirs, eat the traditional food; Koshari and drink fresh sugarcane juice. In the morning you can ride a camel in the Sahara Desert. In the evening you can take a boat ride down the Nile River or enjoy a delicious local meal under the stars. So, are you ready for an unforgettable adventure? Pack your bags, grab your hat, and get ready to discover the magic of Egypt!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. What famous places can you visit in Egypt? ----------.

   a The Eiffel Tower b The Great Wall of China

   c The Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx d Big Ben

2. In the morning you can ---------- in the Sahara Desert.

   a go skiing b surf the waves

   c ride a camel d visit the Eiffel Tower

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What can you do in the evening in Egypt?

   ---

4. What does the underlined word "**it's**" refer to?

   ---

5. Summarize the first paragraph into a sentence.

   ---

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. environment - the - Eco-tourists - look - after. (2024) سوهاج - البلينا

2. university - the - is - studying - She - at. (2024) الإسكندرية - العجمي

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. You ..... (mustn't) respect nature. (2024) الإسكندرية - العجمى

2. She uses a pen to ..... (writes) the homework. (2024) المنوفية - أشمون

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. the older brother was jealous

2. what kind of bird is it

8 Write a paragraph of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Helping the community (2024) المنوفية - شبين الكوم

Guiding words

take part - volunteer

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



Unit 7

Lesson 1

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

My name is Samer. I went on a trip to the Egyptian Museum yesterday. The museum has a lot of artifacts. I met Mr Tarek. Mr Tarek is a guide. The objects in the museum were amazing. I visited Tutankhamun's tomb. The artifacts were made of granite. The Ancient Egyptians were so clever.

Test Unit 7

My name is Shehab. I went to the Pyramids last week. They are great. I went with my family. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids. They built them from granite. It's a hard stone. I saw the Sphinx. It's near the Pyramids. I visited the Khufu solar ship. It's an artifact from Ancient Egypt.

Unit 8

Lesson 2

When I was young, my favorite toy was my black skateboard with orange and yellow stickers. Playing at the park with friends was good fun, but falling off hurt. I got my first skateboard when I was eight, but now I have a bigger one and don't use it.

Lesson 4

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

Test Unit 8

Nour liked sports. She really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

Unit 9

Lesson 1

My name is Ahmed. Every summer my family goes to the countryside to visit my grandparents. My sister feeds the chickens and goats. I ride on the donkey. My mother bakes bread. My father helps my grandparents on the farm.

Lesson 2

Yesterday, I went to the library to read a story. I found an exciting story about a boy and his grandfather. The boy and his grandfather were sitting on the beach. They had a great idea to write a message in a bottle and threw it in the sea. They washed the glass bottle and the boy wrote the message on a piece of paper and put it in the bottle. Then, the boy threw it. After many years, the grandfather sent the reply to the boy.

Lesson 4

We enjoy reading stories or watching films to know the important events. We learn about the characters and they teach us the moral. This moral helps us in our life. Good stories should have endings to tell us what happened to the characters and how they felt at the end of the story.

Test Unit 9

On summer holidays, I like going to my grandpa's farm with my family. He has a big house. We play, sing and watch TV. When we are bored, my grandpa always tells us stories. He has a lot of stories in his bedroom. We sit around him and he reads the story and we listen to him carefully. Then, he asks us some questions about the characters, the events, the setting and the moral. We learn many things from these stories. I always remember my grandpa's stories.

Review 3

Test on Units 7, 8 & 9

Many of Ancient Egyptians kept cats at their homes as pets. When we go to the museum, we can see animal statues, especially cats. They had cats because cats kept their houses free of mice and rats. The Ancient Egyptians believed in the afterlife, so they mummified cats and put them in tombs, as it had a great place.

Unit 10

Lesson 1

My friend Ahmed has a farm in Aswan. It is a big farm. He grows many things there like mangoes, tomatoes and potatoes. He lives on a farm. He has many different types of animals.

Lesson 2

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important.

Lessons 4 - 5

Next Friday, my parents are going to Paris. It is the first time to go there. They feel excited very much. They want to see the Eiffel Tower. They also want to go to the zoo to see the elephants there. The elephant is their favorite animal. They will stay one week there.

Test Unit 10

Akram lives with his small family in Cairo. He lives in a big apartment. He has two sisters. He spends a lot of time with them. They like going shopping in the near shopping mall. He wants to buy some food and a new phone. He doesn't like going to the park because the children there are noisy. On Friday, he visits his uncle on his farm in the village. There, he sees many animals. He likes the horses and the cows.

Unit 11

Lesson 1

I feel happy when I help my neighbor because she is old and she lives alone. After her husband's death, she wanted me to spend time with her. I help her plant and water the flowers in her garden. We sometimes watch TV together. She is very kind to me.

Lesson 3

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and take to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers in confidene when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

Test Unit 11

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use a multi-grip to take off the tops. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use.

Review 4

Test on Units 10 & 11

I'm Ali. I like writing blogs. I'm writing a new blog today. The blog is about animals habitats. We should try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe place to live, find food, and look after their babies. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt. Such as the desert, sea, mountain, rivers.

Notes

Bit by Bit

كتب فى اللغة الإنجليزية

بتصريح وتحت إشراف

وزارة التربية والتعليم والتعليم الفني

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

PARENTS' GUIDE

CONNECT

الصف السادس الإبتدائي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

ملحق

تسميع المفردات

والواجب المنزلي

6th

2025

PRIMARY SIX

SECOND TERM



دار غزة

للطبع والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Unit 7 Amazing artifacts

LESSON 1



Vocabulary

مبهر	صلصال .....
مرشد سياحى	ذهب .....
ظروف	ورق .....
أوانى	حجر جرانيت .....
مادة خام	زجاج .....
سبب/مبرر	ورق البردى .....
رطب/مبتل	قطع أثرية .....
مقبرة	صلب/ قوى .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتلف/يدمر	.....	يدوم	.....
يحفظ	.....	يساعد	.....
يغطى	.....	يعرف	.....

LESSON 2



Vocabulary

فئران	قرد البابون .....
خطير	تمساح .....
مهم	صقر .....
حبوب/غلة	فرس النهر .....
يحنط	طائر أبو منجل .....
عشق	قرد .....
تمثال	ثعبان .....
قرارات	فأر كبير .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعشق	.....	يكبر	.....
يعتقد	.....	يُعلم	.....
يربى	.....	ينتج	.....

ACTIVITIES Lessons 1&2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

plastic - paper - granite - different

Ancient Egyptians were great people. They made a lot of artifacts. They tried to preserve them. They used ❶ ..... materials to make these artifacts. Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids with ❷ ....., a very hard durable stone. They also used glass to make a lot of artifacts. They made ❸ ..... from papyrus.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. Egyptians - to - **The Ancient** - gold - liked - use. المنوفية - إدارة السادات (2024)

2. were - important - **They** - also - the - in - afterlife.

3. mice - didn't - **The** - eat - the - grain. الغربية - إدارة سمنود (2024)

4. taught - **They** - different - monkeys - their - tricks. الإسماعيلية - إدارة القصاصين (2024)

5. ibis - represented - **The** - wisdom. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)

6. used - They - glass - a lot of - last - which - forever.

7. Crocodiles - popular - weren't - pets. الغربية - السنطة (2024)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. "_____" means to love something very much. المنوفية - الشهداء (2024)

a Hate b Adore c See d Eat

2. The falcon is my favorite _____. سوهاج - البلينا (2024)

a food b bird c book d week

3. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked _____ them. القاهرة - الوايلى (2024)

a up b after c on d of

4. My father works as a _____. He shows people historical places. المنيا - مغاغة (2024)

a farmer b doctor c guide d mechanic

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. Where _____ (did) you yesterday? المنوفية - منوف (2024)

2. Amr _____ (go) to the Pyramids last week. الفيوم - الفيوم (2024)

3. The Ancient Egyptians _____ (use) papyrus to make paper in the past.

4. (Was) _____ there students in the class? كفر الشيخ - الحامول (2024)

5. Did Hala _____ (looked after) her pets? الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

6. They didn't _____ (thought) about the afterlife?

7. Did you _____ (keeping) a pet in your house?

8. Did you _____ (had) a nice weekend?

LESSON 3



Vocabulary

دولة	ذهب .....
خطوط	فضة .....
مجوهرات	معدن .....
دموع	زجاج .....
مكافأة	سلاح .....
إنسان	اقتصاد .....
دافئ	عدد/أدوات .....
ذهبي	حديد .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتاجر	.....	يحتفل	.....
يستخدم	.....	يعانق	.....
يصيد	.....	يلمس	.....
يبيع	.....	يطور	.....

LESSONS 4/5



Vocabulary

السماء	نحاس .....
حرفيين	برونز .....
ممكن	نيزك .....
زراعي	الجعران الفرعوني .....
صورة	خنجر .....
نتيجة	يستخرج/منجم .....
ملح	ثمين .....
مرآة	لهب .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يبدأ	.....	يحضر	.....
يحمي	.....	يزين	.....
يظهر	.....	يقسم	.....
يأتي	.....	يرتدي	.....

ACTIVITIES — LESSONS 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The king was walking in his garden when he _____ over something on the ground. بني سويف - الفشن (2024)

a tripped b trapped c hugged d tore

2. "_____" means to buy and sell things between countries. بورسعيد - بورسعيد (2024)

a Shopping b Trading c Traveling d Sailing

3. A "_____" is an object used for fighting or hunting animals. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)

a friend b weapon c pen d box

4. A "_____" is a rock that comes from the sky.

a copper b star c meteorite d plastic

5. _____ is a very precious metal. الإسكندرية - المنتزه (2024)

a Paper b Plastic c Iron d Gold

6. Gold is a popular metal for making _____.

a clothes b jewelry c glasses d food

7. A _____ is a special tool like a knife used as a weapon.

a rock b dagger c sheet d tomb

8. The Ancient Egyptians _____ iron from the ground. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2024)

a fined b mined c cut d grew

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quiet difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians made a famous _____ for Tutankhamun.

a pot b clay c dagger d stone

2. _____ needs a very hot fire to melt.

a Paper b Water c Iron d Plastic

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

_____

4. What did the Ancient Egyptians use before iron?

_____

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

_____

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. also - **They** - mined - the ground - iron - from.

_____

2. Egyptians - with - **The Ancient** - traded - countries - other. الغربية - شرق طنطا (2024)

_____

3. used - **They** - metal - make - tools - to - weapons - and.

_____

4. could - hunt - **They** - grow - and - land. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2024)

_____

5. gave - **He** - food - it - a warm - and - bed. سوهاج - طهطا (2024)

_____

6. did - they - iron - using - **When** - start?

_____

Unit 8 Toys and games

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

نموذج القطار اللعبة	مجسم شخصية كرتونية .....
يهزم	لعبة لوحية .....
اللعب القديمة	دمية العناق .....
كثير من	بيت الدمية .....
يجرب	بلي .....
في الحقيقة/بالفعل	حذاء بعجلات .....
مفضل	لوح تزلج .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يخترع	.....	يجرب/يحاول	.....
يلعب	.....	يرى	.....
يزور	.....	يفكر	.....
يريد	.....	يجد	.....

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

واقي الركبة	لعبة الاستغماية .....
مشروع	لعبة الحجلة .....
مربعات	لعبة نط الحبل .....
ملصقات	مختلف .....
قصص	صعب .....
اختفاء	خوذة .....
مثير للاهتمام	خيال .....
إلى حد ما	جيد في .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يمارس	.....	يبحث	.....
يفضل	.....	يرسم	.....
يستخدم	.....	يجري	.....
يبدأ	.....	يختفي	.....

ACTIVITIES Lessons 1&2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

cuddly - set - figure - candy

I like to play with my toys. I have a lot of old toys. I put them in an old box. There are many toys in it. My favorite toy was a train ❶ _____. My brother's favorite toy was an action ❷ _____. My sister's favorite toy was a ❸ _____ toy. We were all happy when we played with them.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Manar's favorite game is a train _____. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

a set b sat c sit d pet

2. Samah is very good at hiding.She likes playing _____.

a marbles b skipping c hopscotch d hide and seek

3. I wear my _____ to protect my head when I ride a bike. المنيا - العدوة (2024)

a knee pad b helmet c shoes d shirt

4. You can go fast on _____. الغربية - السنطة (2024)

a rollerblades b marbles c board games d doll's house

5. Gasser wears _____ to protect his knees. المنوفية - منوف (2024)

a helmets b shirts c knee pads d sneakers

6. Playing is _____ for us in lots of different ways.

a bad b sad c good d boring

7. I'd love to see my favorite cuddly _____ again. أسيوط - البداري (2024)

a boy b toy c blade d board

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. at all - **She** - like - skipping - doesn't. القاهرة - الوايلي (2024)

_____

2. did - find - **What** - you - the box - in? المنوفية - بركة السبع (2024)

_____

3. have - **Did** - you - on - a go - them?

_____

4. found - a box - **I** - my - toys - old - of. الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر (2024)

_____

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. I don't like playing tennis _____ **(all)**. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)

2. This match is boring. I don't like it _____ **(quite)**.

3. Amer speaks French _____ **(quite)** well, he lived in Paris for many years.

4. Ramzy is a lazy student. All teachers don't like him _____ **(very)**.

5. My brother is _____ **(quite)** good at tennis. He always beats me.

6. This book is not funny _____ **(quite)**.

7. The lesson wasn't interesting _____ **(so)**. القليوبية - شبرا الخيمة (2024)

LESSON 3



Vocabulary

طاولة كبيرة	..... زر
قماش	..... شراع
طماطم	..... طاولة عرض البضائع
عصير ليمون	..... خرطوم الفيل
آلة	..... مدهش
خشب	..... فصل
الوالدين	..... قارب

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتسوق	.....	يبيع	.....
يبتسم	.....	يشتري	.....
يتحرك	.....	يختار	.....
يعرض	.....	يكسر	.....

LESSON 4



Vocabulary

لعبة لودو	..... وحدة تحكم الألعاب
حديث	..... وصف
رأي	..... ألعاب المغامرات
الخارج	..... بالرغم من
سبب/مبرر	..... صورة
مشكلة	..... مكعبات
طوب	..... مبدع

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يصف	.....	يبني	.....
يشارك	.....	يجد	.....
يحل	.....	يعتقد	.....
يهزم	.....	يصنع	.....

ACTIVITIES — LESSONS 3&4



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

beats - board - hour - games

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopsctoch and ❶ _____ games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often ❷ _____ me! My favorite games are video games. I play them for about an ❸ _____ on the weekends. It's fun.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I like building things. I use _____ to build things. المنوفية - قويسنا (2023)

a toys b bricks c boards d pens

2. A _____ is a strong piece of cloth that make a boat move. سوهاج - سوهاج (2023)

a seed b soil c sail d sand

3. A _____ is when there isn't enough rain. المنيا - العدوة (2023)

a flower b drought c flood d wing

4. A trunk is a long _____ of an elephant. أسيوط - البدارى (2024)

a nose b ear c mouth d leg

5. I use my games _____ when I play video games. الغربية - السلطة (2023)

a console b board c bricks d blocks

6. A _____ is a large table that you use to sell things from at a market.

a ball b pen c stall d mall

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Some of the image in modern video games are amazing. Video games are very **exciting**. I've got new games console, which I share with my brother. He enjoys playing adventure games. Adventure games can be difficult but I think they can be fun, too. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. I think video games can be great when you do something creative.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ are amazing in video games.

a Brothers b Images c Games d Sisters

2. The underlined word "**exciting**" means _____.

a bad b interesting c sad d difficult

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When can video games be a problem? _____

4. When can video games be great? _____

5. Summarize the text in one sentence. _____

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. Adel enjoys _____ **(spend)** time with his friends.

2. Ahmed hates _____ **(to riding)** his bike. المنوفية - تلا (2024)

3. We imagine _____ **(travels)** to the moon.

4. Sara prefers _____ **(drink)** coffee instead of tea.

5. I finish _____ **(studies)** at 10 o'clock.

6. My father stops _____ **(smoke)**. الغربية - السنطة (2024)

7. Does she enjoy _____ **(read)** stories?

March Test 1 on Units (7)&(8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: المنوفية - تلا (2023)

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ali's favorite toy is a _____.
   a train set b cuddly bear c doll d skateboard
2. Adel's favorite toy is a _____.
   a doll b train set c skateboard d pen
3. Adel has to wear a _____ when he plays with skateboard.
   a shirt b T-shirt c helmet d hat
4. Adel loves going to the _____ to play with his friends.
   a school b club c park d station

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When the stone is very hard, it's _____.
   a soft b clean c durable d hot
2. Ancient Egyptians built the pyramids with _____.
   a flour b plastic c granite d paper
3. To "_____" is to be more successful than someone in a game.
   a lose b beat c visit d find

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الغربية - السنطة (2023)

creative - outside - animals - cities

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often. I play them for about an hour on the weekend. My favorite games are ones where you can build ❶ _____. I've made a big city that has ❷ _____ and plants. I love them because you can be ❸ _____ and make something new.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة: الاسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك (2024)

My name is Hala. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family in Cairo. I go to school on foot because it's near my house. My favorite subject is English. I like **it** very much because it's a fantastic language. I have two brothers and a sister. My teachers are very helpful. When I go back from school, I have lunch at three o'clock. I usually do my homework at seven and sleep at nine.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Hala is _____ years old.

a 10 b 9 c 12 d 11

2. The underlined word "**it**" refers to _____.

a Arabic b science c English d art

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why does Hala go to school on foot?

_____

4. When does Hala sleep?

_____

5. Where does Hala live?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. games - on - **Children** - play - like to - the sand. البحيرة - دمهنور (2024)

_____

2. favorite - is - **My** - toy - a - set - train. الجيزة - البدرشين (2024)

_____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Mohamed enjoys _____ (read) stories. الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين (2024)
2. He didn't like skipping _____ (very). الاقصر - إدارة اسنا (2024)

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. we laugh when we play draughts

_____

2. do you play with your toys

_____

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Metals in Ancient Egypt القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024)

Guiding words

copper - gold

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

March Test 2 on Units (7)&(8)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة — المنوفية - إدارة أشمون (2024)

1. King Midas was walking in his _____.
   a house b garden c company d hospital
2. He tripped over a strange-looking _____.
   a sheep b goat c cat d horse
3. The king took it to his _____.
   a cattle b candle c castle d kettle
4. He gave it _____.
   a toy b food c corn d water

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Iron, _____ and bronze are metal that Ancient Egyptians used.
   الجيزة - البدرشين (2024)
   a fire b copper c grain d meteorite
2. Nora has a big _____house that she likes to play with it.
   a board b cuddly c train d doll's
3. There are some wooden toys on the toy _____.
   a bank b stall c steel d sail

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: بنى سويف - إدارة سمسطا (2024)

playing - many - younger - quite

I am Nada. I really enjoyed playing outside. When I was ❶ _____, I liked running, climbing and ❷ _____ tennis. I was ❸ _____ good at football, too. Playing games was fun.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

When we get together with our friends or family, we sometimes play party games. There are many traditional party games."Hide and seek" is my favorite. We all love to play it. **Many** players can join in this game. It's very exciting. All you need is a wide place to play it. One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about _____ .

a toys b food

c party games d family and friends

2. The opposite of the word "**Many**" is _____.

a much b a few c a little d more

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence _____

4. What do we need to play hide and seek? _____

5. What does the seeker do? _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. animals - loved - The - Egyptians - Ancient. _____

2. her - Jana - Did - have - rollerblades - on - a go? _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Where _____ (do) they go last week?

2. The film isn't interesting _____ (quite).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. why do we need iron _____

2. i was very good at hiding _____

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Trade in Ancient Egypt

Guiding words

economy - metal

_____

_____

_____

_____

Unit 9 What's the story?

LESSON 1



Vocabulary

كلاهما	وقت/مكان القصة
التفاصيل	الشخصيات
رحلة	النهاية
قصص	الراوى (فى قصة)
دولة	درس أخلاقى
عظيم	الريف
ماهر	دور

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحدث		يكتب	
يمر		يعرف	
يحمل		يدع/يسمح	
يركب		يرفض	

LESSON 2



Vocabulary

الفضاء	الأجداد
بجوار البحر	رسالة
فكرة أفضل	زجاجة مصنوعة (من الزجاج)
ممشى	قمامة
هادئ	يحرز هدف
يطوى	رسالة نصية
شائع	قطعة من الورق

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يمر	.....	ينسى	.....
يتزلج على الماء	.....	يرسل	.....
يصل	.....	يعطى	.....
يطوى	.....	يرن	.....

ACTIVITIES Lessons 1,2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2024)

angry - funny - make - narrator

We read stories to learn the moral at the ending of the story. The characters and the setting show us the events. The ❶ _____ is also important. Stories also ❷ _____ us happy and laugh a lot. For example, Goha's stories are both ❸ _____ and clever.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____ is a person who tells us the story. المنوفية - منوف (2024)

a moral b setting c character d narrator

2. We learn a lesson from a story. It is called a _____. أسيوط - البدارى (2024)

a coral b moral c narrator d character

3. The ending part of a story is the _____ part of it. الغربية - شرق طنطا (2024)

a third b first c last d beginning

4. The farmer went to the _____ to sell the grain. المنوفية - تلا (2024)

a cinema b museum c market d school

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. We _____ **(swim)** in the sea at 4 pm yesterday evening. البحيرة - الدلنجات (2024)

2. I _____ **(not watch)** TV, when you called me. أسيوط - البدارى (2024)

3. We were traveling to the city when grandpa _____ **(call)** us. بنى سويف - بنى سويف (2024)

4. She was _____ **(walk)** home when she met her friend. الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة (2024)

5. Ghada and I _____ **(play)** computer games when her brother arrived home. سوهاج - إدارة طهطا (2024)

LESSON 3



Vocabulary

بمفرده	أغنام .....
غاضب	ساكن القرية .....
قصص غير حقيقية	راعي الغنم .....
ذات مرة	ذئب .....
تل	وحيد .....
فجأة	شاعر بالملل .....
الحقيقة	ندمان .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يضايق /يزعج	.....	يستريح	.....
يصدق	.....	يصيح	.....
ينقذ	.....	يقتل	.....
يضيع	.....	يظهر	.....

LESSON 4



Vocabulary

كم البعد ؟	الساحل .....
رسالة	الإبحار .....
زجاجة	متحمس .....
ساحل	طريق طويل .....
كيلومترات	فرنسا .....
يومًا ما	رد .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يرد	.....	ينسى	.....
يقرر	.....	يسافر	.....
يشعر	.....	يزور	.....
يجد	.....	يعني/يقصد	.....

ACTIVITIES Lessons 3,4



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: بني سويف - بني سويف (2024)

bored - grass - sheep - true

Once, there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a shepherd looking after ❶ _____. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate delicious ❷ _____. One day, Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely and ❸ _____.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My father works as a _____, he looks after sheep. الشرقية - الصالحية (2024)

a doctor b nurse c guide d shepherd

2. The villagers came to _____ the sheep from the wolf. الغربية - السنطة (2024)

a waste b annoy c save d tell

3. If you tell _____ stories, no one will believe you.

a untidy b unkind c untrue d unhappy

4. Your news is _____ It happens and is true. المنوفية - أشمون (2024)

a unreal b wrong c false d true

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. decided - some - **Peter** - fun - have - to. (2024) أسيوط - ديروط

2. worked - alone - **He** - a shepherd - as. (2024) قنا - إدارة الوقف

3. have - **We** - to - a reply - our - message - a bottle - in.

4. reached - **They** - top - the - of - the hill. (2024) الإسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك

5. must - **You** - the - tell - truth. (2024) المنيا - إدارة العدوة

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What _____ **(is)** they doing yesterday evening? (2024) السويس - الأربعين

2. Was he _____ **(wait)** you when you called him? (2024) البحيرة - دمنهور

3. I was sailing a boat when I _____ **(see)** something in the water. (2024) المنوفية - أشمون

4. I was _____ **(watch)** TV when my father came. (2024) أسوان - إدفو

5. He _____ **(reading)** when his dad called him.

6. They were _____ **(eat)** fish yesterday evening.

Unit 10 Free as a bird

LESSON 1



Vocabulary

وصف	ناجح .....
دقيق	مشابه/متشابه .....
حقيقة علمية	حقيقي/واقعى .....
ريش	عاقل - حكيم .....
مَثل/قول مأثور	غريب .....
مخيف	حريص .....
خطة	نعامة .....
عش	طائر الطنان .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يفقس	.....	يخبر	.....
يحاول	.....	يطير	.....
يجرؤ	.....	يعني	.....
يتجمع/يحتشد	.....	يصطاد	.....

LESSON 2



Vocabulary

منطقة محمية	مستدام/صديق للبيئة .....
خيمة	بسيط .....
سحلية	إقامة .....
فرصة	مثالى - نموذجى .....
عطلة - إجازة	سائح .....
متجر	رحلة .....
مسافة	غروب الشمس .....
شعاب مرجانية	تقليدى .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يهاجر	.....	يصمم	.....
يدمر	.....	يحترم	.....
يؤلم/يؤذي	.....	يحمي	.....
يصبح	.....	يبحر	

ACTIVITIES Lessons 1,2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: بني سويف - بني سويف (2023)

busy - kinds - popular - brings

Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different ❶ ..... of birds we can see. The sea in this area is a very ❷ ..... place for birds to find food, so it will be a ❸ ..... day.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Birds of a feather ..... together. الجيزة - أوسيم (2024)

a tries b hatch c flock d kill

2. Don't count your chickens before they ..... . البحر الأحمر - الغردقة (2024)

a hatch b match c catch d flock

3. Some people stay in simple ....., they don't like large hotels. الغربية - شرق طنطا (2024)

a parks b accommodations c schools d museum

4. The area contains many ..... of migrating birds. سوهاج - البلينا (2024)

a metals b clubs c species d stars

5. Wildlife watching is ideal for people who ..... nature. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

a hate b damage c respect d destroy

6. A _____ is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.
الإسماعيلية - القصاصين (2024)

a chicken b proverb c nest d bird

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. important - respect - It's - to - nature.
المنيا - العدوة (2024)

_____

2. mustn't - trash - You - the desert - leave - in.
الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

_____

3. the - respect - We - teachers - must.
الغربية - شرق طنطا (2024)

_____

4. swim - We - mustn't - the - coral reefs - near.
الغربية - شرق طنطا (2024)

_____

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. They _____ (mustn't) study hard.
2. We must _____ (are) polite.
سوهاج - البلينا (2024)
3. We mustn't _____ (smoked) in nature.
الإسكندرية - شرق (2024)
4. You _____ (mustn't) respect nature.
الأقصر - إسنا (2024)
5. We _____ (must) swim because there might be sharks here.
الإسماعيلية - القصابين (2024)
6. You _____ (must) scare birds.
7. You _____ (must) throw trash on beaches.
8. You _____ (mustn't) be careful when you cross the street.

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

طائر السمامة	صديق للبيئة .....
صقر	ناجح .....
نسر / عقاب	سكان محليون .....
طائر الفلامنجو	معسكر / مخيم .....
طائر الرفراف	سياحة بيئية .....
واحة	عطلة تقليدية .....
مجموعات / أسراب	بجعة .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتلف - يدمر	.....	ينهض	.....
يساند - يدعم	.....	يلحق بـ	.....
يستكشف	.....	يعني / يقصد	.....
يتعلم	.....	يعتني بـ	.....

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

مختلف	محمية وطنية .....
قمامة	الغوص بأنبوب .....
كوكب	مشاهد الحياة البرية .....
فيضان	شبه جزيرة سيناء .....
جفاف	يسبح بأنبوب التنفس .....
حريق	سمكة قرش .....
غابة	موطن .....
تأثيرات	مدونة إلكترونية .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يؤلم/يؤذي	.....	يسمح	.....
يأتي	.....	يتغير	.....
يقطع	.....	ينمو	.....
يهدر	.....	يسقط	.....

ACTIVITIES — LESSONS 3,4&5



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: سوهاج - إدارة البلينا (2024)

wildlife - allowed - sea - ride

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and may be sharks. There is lots of other ❶ _____ too, and it is a great place for bird watching. The National park is protected, but people are ❷ _____ to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ❸ _____ boats, or swim and snorkel.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The scuba divers explored the _____. الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2024)

a desert b coral reefs c tents d mountains

2. We go _____ under the water. بني سويف - إدارة إهسا (2024)

a hiking b sleeping c migrating d snorkeling

3. People can go on wildlife _____ vacations. البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة (2024)

a changing b watching c going d washing

4. Many birds _____ to and from Egypt every year. المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم (2024)

a eat b drink c sleep d migrate

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Many birds migrate from a country to another to find warmer weather. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large **flocks** of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in the rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see Flamingos.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about " _____ ".

a clothes b Bird's migration c Bad weather d goats

2. The underlined word "**flocks**" means _____.

a animals b people c groups d places

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where can you see flamingos?

_____

4. Summarize the text into a sentence.

_____

5. Where's Lake Qarun?

_____

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If she learns to bake, she _____ **(save)** a lot of money.

بني سويف - إدارة بني سويف (2024)

2. If Nada eats all this cake, she _____ **(feel)** sick. سوهاج - إدارة البلينا (2024)

3. If she _____ **(felt)** thirsty, she will drink water. الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة (2024)

4. If they _____ **(not/ leave)** now, we won't catch the bus.

الدقهلية - ميت غمر (2024)

April Test 1 on Units (9)&(10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

1. Next _____ Heba is going on a tour.
   a day b year c month d week
2. They are going to see birds and _____.
   a sky b moon c animals d sun
3. They are traveling in a small _____.
   a plane b boat c car d train
4. They will bring their _____.
   a cameras b hats c pots d cats

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____ of the story is the last part of it. (2024) الإسكندرية - المنتزه
   a beginning b ending c character d setting
2. Birds of a _____ flock together. (2024) المنوفية - تلا
   a hair b feather c leather d birds
3. _____ live in nests. (2024) الدقهلية - ميت غمر
   a People b Animals c Birds d Fish

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (2023) القاهرة - المرج

have - want - help - believe

You should always tell the truth. If you tell untrue stories many times, no one will ① _____ you. Then, you may ② _____ some problems, and no one will ③ _____ to help you.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: (2024) السويس - إدارة الأربعين

The Ras Mohamed National Park is on the Red Sea. It is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area is on the Sinai Peninsula. It is **famous** for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to

snorkel and scuba dive there. You can see coral reefs and lots of colored fish. There is lots of other wildlife, too. It is a great place for bird watching. Lots of visitors can ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ras Mohamed National Park is a / an _____ park .

a Egypt b Egyptian c French d Chinese

2. The meaning of the underlined word "**famous**" is _____.

a bad b known c sick d unknown

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is The Ras Mohamed National Park famous for? _____

4. Can you see coral reefs at The Ras Mohamed National Park? _____

5. Who can ride boats in The Ras Mohamed National Park? _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. important - respect - It's - to - nature. _____

2. was - sister - My little - last - sick - month. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Where _____ (are) you going yesterday morning?

2. We _____ (must) play in the streets. It's not safe.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. why are birds important _____

2. it's a great place _____

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Bird migration

Guiding phrases

species - large flocks

_____

_____

_____

April Test 2 on Units (9)&(10)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة : الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر (2024)

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ali and I were playing in the ..... yesterday.

a park b forest c ocean d sea

2. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was ..... .

a shining b going c reading d walking

3. We were walking along the ..... .

a road b bridge c path d castle

4. We saw a little ..... in the distance.

a apartment b house c stone d train

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____ looks after his sheep. الغربية - طنطا (2024)

a teacher b hill c pets d shepherd

2. The _____ of the story is (you must tell the truth).

a setting b moral c brain d narrator

3. Wildlife watching is ideal for people who _____ nature. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة (2024)

a damage b respect c hurt d buy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: بورسعيد - بورسعيد (2024)

bottle - coast - house - boat

My name is Mariam. I live in Port Said. I am twenty years old. My house is near the ❶ _____ of the sea. I love sailing my ❷ _____. Last week, I was sailing my boat when I saw something in the water. It was a message in a glass ❸ _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

المنوفية - بركة السبع (2024)

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Many tourists like to visit Egypt. They usually come to Egypt in winter. They visit many places in Egypt such as the Cairo Tower, the pyramids and the temples. They enjoy the wonderful weather of Luxor and Aswan in winter. they usually take photos of the **ancient** temples. They buy many things as souvenirs to remind them of Egypt. so they like to come in summer. They like to visit Hurghada for its fantastic beaches.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about "_____".

a Sports b Metals c Tourism in Egypt d Habitats

2. The underlined word "**ancient**" is the opposite of "_____".

a dirty b modern c fresh d clear

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Which places do tourists visit in Hurghada?

_____

4. Why do tourists go to Luxor and Aswan in winter?

_____

5. What do tourists take at the temples?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. an - habitat - **It** - important - is.

_____

2. wolf - **The** - killed - ate - and - the sheep.

_____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I _____ **(run)** when I met my father.

الغربية - بسيون (2024)

2. You must _____ **(is)** careful when you cross the street.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what were you doing

2. lots of people want to visit Egypt

8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Eco-tourism

Guiding words

hotels - sustainable

Unit 11 Amazing journeys

LESSON 1



Vocabulary

مهارات	المجتمع .....
قلق	فكرة .....
روضة أطفال	طازج .....
خاص بـ	قمامة .....
مريض	مشهور .....
يتحسن	نادي ما بعد المدرسة .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يتبرع	.....	يؤسس	.....
يدعم	.....	يختار	.....
يتطوع	.....	يفكر	.....
يلون	.....	يزرع	.....
ينشئ	.....		

LESSON 2



Vocabulary

عصا التحكم (لعبة)	خُطاف/لاقط قمامة .....
قفازات	كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعية .....
الحياة البرية	قبضة متعددة الاستخدام .....
شخصية	جهاز التحكم (لعبة) .....
قائمة	مقبض .....
شيف	زر .....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يحمل	.....	يقفز	.....
يلقي	.....	يمسك	.....
يضغط	.....	يضع	.....
يجمع	.....	يتعلم	.....
يعصر	.....		

ACTIVITIES — LESSONS 1,2



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: القليوبية - إدارة بنها (2024)

pictures - sad - donated - toys

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was ❶ _____ because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big ❷ _____ of flowers, animals, beaches and trees. Our parents ❸ _____ lots of toys, too.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Old people use a _____ to take off the tops of glasses. قنا - قوص (2024)

a multigrip b joystick c controller d stick

2. I use games _____ to control the player in video games. البحيرة - دمنهور (2024)

a beggar b console c finger d plate

3. A" _____" is something you press to make something happen. الفيوم - سمسطا (2024)

a handle b camera c button d top

4. To "_____" is to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.

المنوفية - إدارة تلا (2024)

a shop b run c volunteer d clean

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة

1. parents - donated - Our - toys - of - lots.

المنيا - إدارة ملوي (2024)

_____

2. you - Do - want - a game - to - with me - play?

الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح (2024)

_____

3. this - Is - your - games console - new?

الغربية - إدارة شرق طنطا (2024)

_____

4. are - What - these - for - buttons?

أسيوط - إدارة ديروط (2024)

_____

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She wears sunglasses _____ (for) protect her eyes from the sun.

الغربية - إدارة السنطة (2024)

2. Rokia studies hard _____ (pass) her exam.

الجيزة - إدارة أوسيم (2024)

3. I'll open the bottle _____ (to drank) water.

البحر الأحمر - إدارة القصير (2024)

4. Samar goes to school _____ (learning).

شمال سيناء - إدارة العريش (2024)

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i ride my bike

_____

2. where can we volunteer

_____

LESSON 3



Vocabulary

وحيدًا - بمفرده	جمع تبرعات
سميك	ثقة
مهارات	مكافأة
يعتني بـ	غيور / حسود
قوي	عصفور
مراهق	يرد الجميل
ضخم	يتواصل اجتماعيًا

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يريد		يصل	
يختفي		يمسك	
يرد		يقطع	
يتسلق			

LESSONS 4/5



Vocabulary

المدرسة الإعدادية	الشباب
جامعة	علوم اجتماعية
قائد	مواطن
ناجح	جامع التبرعات
عناوين	جائزة
نفاية - مخلفات	سيرة ذاتية
مندهش	في بداية الحياة
منشور	التطوع

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يقود		يقلل	
يدير		ينظم	
يفوز		يحترم	
يشارك			

ACTIVITIES Lessons 3,4&5



1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

advice - charities - Volunteering - teenagers

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. ❶ _____ also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how ❷ _____ grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps ❸ _____ get the money they need.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. "_____" is to collect money for a charity. القليوبية - كفر شكر (2024)

a Reward b Fundraising c Jealous d Game

2. My brother is a chef . He _____ a restaurant in Cairo. القاهرة - الوايلي (2024)

a play b eats c runs d studies

3. My father always gives me _____ for good work.

a reward b kitchen c house d river

4. Everyone hates _____ people. الإسماعيلية - القصاصين (2024)

a happy b jealous c useful d kind

5. Most students _____ a lot of money to charities. الإسكندرية - الجمرك (2023)

a eat b burn c donate d win

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My sister is eating candies _____ **(hungry)**. البحيرة - مركز بدر (2024)

2. Hadeer studies English _____ **(hardly)**. كفر الشيخ - مطوبس (2024)

3. My friend Amr plays the piano _____ **(good)**. الشرقية - العاشر من رمضان (2024)

4. Younus hates playing football. He plays _____ **(bad)**. الجيزة - أوسيم (2024)

5. Sherif opend the door _____ **(quiet)** because his father was sleeping. المنوفية - قويسنا (2024)

General Tests



امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسى الثاني

1 محافظة القاهرة

إدارة الزاوية التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

1. Cats are usually _____.
   a Friendly b hungry c slow d scared
2. Cats have _____ fur.
   a hard b soft c large d long
3. Cats are _____ pets around the world.
   a bad b ugly c popular d dangerous
4. Cats have sharp _____.
   a claws b eyes c tails d fins

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The Ancient Egyptians also _____ iron from the ground.
   a mined b damaged c destroyed d appeared
2. The _____ wanted to eat the sheep.
   a donkey b horse c monkey d wolf
3. A proverb usually has more than _____ meaning.
   a one b two c three d four

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

artifacts - cheap - valuable - clay

The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also use ① _____ which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots. They also liked to use gold because it is ② _____, but it is also very durable. When they cover ③ _____ in gold, they kept them in good condition.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Video games have become one of the most **popular** games. All children like playing them. I like all kinds of games. I have a good time playing with my friends. Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new game console. I like playing adventure games where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. However, video games can be a problem when you play them too much.

A- Choose the correct answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is _____.

   a football b basketball c board games d video games

2. The underlined word "**popular**" means _____.

   a unknown b common c important d silly

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

   _____

4. When can video games be a problem?

   _____

5. Why do you like playing adventure games?

   _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. is - protect - **Eco-tourism** - nature - designed - to.

   _____

2. did - **What** - want - people - grow - some - to?

   _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I _____ (**plays**) football at the club yesterday.
2. Nadia _____ (**so**) enjoys reading comic stories.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. roqia loves doing new things so much

_____

2. Who did adam want to help

_____

8 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Eco-tourism

Guiding words

sustainable - accommodation

_____

_____

_____

_____

2 محافظة الجيزة
إدارة منشأة القناطر التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Next week, Noura and her family are going on a _____.
   - a tour
   - b journey
   - c vacation
   - d safari
2. Noura and her family will travel along the _____ in a small boat.
   - a sea
   - b river
   - c lake
   - d desert
3. They will _____ in tents at night.
   - a play
   - b help
   - c camp
   - d sail
4. Noura and her family hope to see _____ and turtles.
   - a crocodiles
   - b fish
   - c cats
   - d lizards

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tarek is writing a _____ on a piece of paper.
   - a bottle
   - b glass
   - c beach
   - d message

2. Eco-tourism is more _____ than traditional tourism.

a similar b wild c sustainable d historical

3. I gave some _____ to the birds. They were very hungry.

a wood b clay c glass d grain

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

playing - bored - board - bricks

Emad enjoys playing games. He plays video games and ❶ _____ games. He plays them with his friends. They can build cities using ❷ _____. Emad also plays games with his brother. His brother likes ❸ _____ adventure games because they are exciting.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Adel's uncle lives in a small town by the sea. The beach near his house was quiet and beautiful. Last summer, when Adel visited his uncle, he went to the beach with his cousins. They spent a funny time **there**. They swam in the sea. Adel built a sand castle when he found a bottle. He wanted to throw it in the sea but his cousins took the bottle. They wrote a message, put it in the bottle and throw the bottle in the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**there**" refers to _____.

a house b beach c summer d town

2. Adel was building a sand castle when he found a _____.

a book b message c bottle d sea

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did Adel visit his uncle?

_____

4. What did they do in the sea?

_____

5. Where does Adel's uncle live?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. will - come - soon - **The** - home - birds - my - to. _____

2. do - **How** - play - often - games - video - you? _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My brother's bed is _____ (behind) to his desk.
2. What _____ (are) you doing yesterday evening?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. heba was very good at playing video games

_____

2. Why was adel's uncle sad

_____

8 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your last vacation

Guiding questions

1- Where did you go?
2- Who did you go with?

_____

_____

_____

_____

محافظة القليوبية

إدارة طوخ التعليمية

3

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. I loved playing with my old _____.
   a action figures b train set c doll's house d rollerblade
2. I made up lots of _____ for my action figures.
   a hats b food c games d clothes
3. I didn't have a/an _____.
   a train set b action figures c rollerblade d cuddly toy
4. My sister had a big _____.
   a doll's house b cuddly toy c marbles d skateboard

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Gold is a valuable and _____ metal.

a durable b liquid c cheap d dangerous

2. I can run very fast with my _____.

a stalls b marbles c rollerblades d helmets

3. Goha is the main _____ in the story.

a massage b moral c character d ending

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

fly - way - ideal - open

People who go bird-watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might ❶ _____ away,but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs! Wild life watching is ❷ _____ for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good ❸ _____ for people to do this.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in The Red Sea, go on desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important, but eco-tourism is becoming very **popular**, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism. And it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that can cause lots of pollution.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c ord:

1. Eco-tourism doesn't _____ the environment.

a protect b keep c damage d save

2. The underlined word "**popular**" means " _____ ".

a famous b difficult c old d simple

B. answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

_____

4. What activities can people do in The Red Sea?

_____

5. What can people climb?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. main - was - brave - very - character - The. _____
2. in - the - A man - France - found - massage. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The library is in front _____ (off) the hospital.
2. Hazem was _____ (watch) the football match when Egypt scored a goal.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. there are lots of different habitats in egypt.

_____

2. did the Ancient Egyptians love animals

_____

8 Write an email of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

About Goha's stories. Your friend's email address is Yasseen@yahoo.com. Your name is Abdallah and your email address is Abdallah@yahoo.com

Guiding words

Goha - donkey

New Message

To ..... **Cc** **Bcc**

From .....

Subject .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 محافظة المنوفية
إدارة السادات التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Next _____, Nadia is going on a tour.
   a day b week c month d night
2. They're going to see birds and animals which live near the _____.
   a trees b desert c sky d water
3. They are traveling along the river in small _____.
   a cars b trains c planes d boats
4. They will bring their _____.
   a umbrellas b clothes c hats d cameras

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A "_____" is a long nose of an elephant.
   a weapon b cave c cakes d trunk
2. We can plant flowers and plants to _____ animal habitats.
   a hurt b waste c help d damage
3. The Ancient Egyptians loved the _____ which represented wisdom.
   a crow b pelican c falcon d ibis

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

knee - fun - skateboards - hurts

I love going to the park and playing with my friends. They had ❶ _____, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and ❷ _____ pads. It really ❸ _____ if you fall off a skateboard.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is an **ideal** place for people who go wildlife watching. Egypt is home for about 450 different species of birds. People come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is an excellent place to see a large number of migrating water birds. It is an important habitat for these birds so people must protect it. Tourists can watch the birds from a safe distance and take lots of pictures, but they mustn't get too close to them. We all must respect nature.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:

1. The underlined word "**ideal**" means _____.
   a perfect b bad c simple d different
2. We all must respect _____.
   a number b nature c picture d vacation

B: Answer the following questions:

3. How many species of birds are there in Egypt?

_____

4. What mustn't tourists do there?

_____

5. Summarize the passage in one sentence.

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. **Did** - a - weekend - have - nice - you? _____
2. laugh - when - **We** - play - we - draughts. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If Omar _____ (**played**) too much, he'll be tired.
2. I went to the club to _____ (**playing**) football.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. what are these buttons for

_____

2. i like video games

_____

8 Write an email of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Khaled about "**Your favorite toy**". Your name is Ahmed. Your friend's email address is khaled@gmail.com and your email address is ahmed@gmail.com

Guiding questions

1- How often do you play it?
2- Where do you play it?

New Message

To ..... Cc Bcc

From .....

Subject .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5 محافظة الشرقية

إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Ahmed is grade _____.
   a six b seven c four d five
2. He went to the _____ last week.
   a park b museum c club d zoo
3. Ahmed met a _____ in the museum.
   a teacher b student c guide d tourist
4. A lot of artifacts are made of _____.
   a copper b bronze c iron d gold

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The _____ are the people or animals in a story.

a characters b narrators c setting d endings

2. _____ is a very hard and durable stone.

a Clay b Glass c Granite d wood

3. To take part in something means to _____.

a donate b support c volunteer d participate

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

simple - vacations - protect - migrating

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on ❶ _____ to see them. For example, Swia Oasis is a fantastic place to see many ❷ _____ water birds. It is an important habitat and people must ❸ _____ it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one of the most interesting things they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than stone, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons so that they could hunt and grow food. Gold was popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but it was rare. They got silver through trade with other countries.

A: Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d:

1. Gold was popular metal for making _____.

a food b paper c jewelry d bread

2. Silver was also used, but it was _____.

a expensive b rare c near d easier

B: Answer the following questions:

3. Where did the Ancient Egyptians first find metal?

_____

4. What did the Ancient Egyptians use metal for?

_____

5. Summarize the passage in one sentence.

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. people - some - want to - What - grow - did?. _____

2. a reward - I - want - you - to - give _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We enjoy _____ (make up) stories.
2. Salwa plays the piano _____ (beautiful).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. Tourism is important for egypt

_____

2. What was amr good at

_____

8 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

What did you do yesterday?

Guiding phrases

ate breakfast - went to school

_____

_____

_____

_____

6 محافظة الغربية

إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved _____ so much.

a mice b cats c rats d rabbits

2. They believed that cats keep them _____.

a safe b unsafe c dangerous d ugly

3. Farmers produce a lot of _____.

a vegetables b fruits c grain d cotton

4. Cats eat _____.

a birds b donkeys c dogs d rats

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Birds of a feather flock _____.

a together b alone c in Paris d with their mother

2. The _____ tells you what happens at the end of the story.

a beginning b middle c ending d moral

3. Wearing pads protects our _____ if we fall off the skateboard.

a knees b ears c mouths d noses

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

set - food - bought - amazing

Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train ❶ _____. Ali thought the toys were ❷ _____. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train,so he ❸ _____ it for Ali to play with it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

When we get together with our friends or family, we sometimes play party games. There are many party games. "Hide and seek" is my favorite. It's very exciting. All you need is a wide place to play it. One player, called the seeker, closes **his** or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The last one left is the winner.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about _____.

a food b friends c party games d toys

2. The underlined pronoun "**his**" refers to the _____.

a seeker b hide c left d last

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do we need to play hide and seek?

4. Who is the winner?

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. yesterday - were - you - **Where**?
2. copper - **This** - scarab amulet - made - of - is.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. When she _____ (**comes**) back from school, her mom was cooking.
2. If we _____ (**went**) to the sea, we'll swim.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i could go fast on my skateboard
2. what was your favorite toy

8 Write a text of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A day on the beach

Guiding questions

1- When did you go?
2- What did you do there?

7 محافظة الدقهلية

إدارة ميت غمر التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

1. You can learn many important life _____.
   a skills b toys c hills d mix
2. Volunteering also gives you _____.
   a life b confidence c area d shops
3. Teenagers grow in confidence when they start _____.
   a subject b adult c babies d volunteering
4. You learn how to _____.
   a socialize b travel c study d money

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers produce a lot of _____ every year.
   a roads b houses c statues d grain
2. _____ and running are outside activities.
   a Climbing b Reading c Cooking d Wearing
3. We have a hot, dry _____ in Egypt.
   a street b water c rain d climate

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

visit - doll's house - board - cuddly

Adam made up lots of games for my action figure. When I was young, my sister, Manal has a ❶ _____ toy. It's soft and cute. I made up a ❷ _____ for my sister's doll. We like to play ❷ _____ games together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

We all know that the Ancient Egyptians built amazing pyramids and made many things that we use today. For example, **they** were the first people to make sandals. They were similar to the ones we wear today. They also used clay to make pots. Those pots gave us ideas for the pots we eat in today. But what did the ancient Egyptians eat? Archaeologists found ancient recipes of bread in tombs. They ate it with vegetables, eggs and perhaps fruit and honey.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used clay to make _____.

a sandals b pyramids c pots d bread

2. The underlined word "**they**" refers to _____.

a Ancient Egyptians b the pyramids

c pots d sandals

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the text.

_____

4. What did the Ancient Egyptians eat bread with?

_____

5. What did archaeologists find in tombs?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. prefers - new - **She** - with - toys - playing. _____

2. bored - was - and - **The boy** - lonely. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Was he _____ (**look**) after the sheep?
2. She's a good runner. She runs _____ (**quick**).

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. she learned the rules of the game quickly

_____

2. what does this proverb mean

_____

8 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Ways to be a good citizen

Guiding words

respect - volunteer

_____

_____

_____

8 محافظة كفر الشيخ
إدارة دسوق التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. One of the most beautiful artifacts from ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's _____.
   a shoes b mask c book d pyramid
2. Tutankhamun's mask is made of _____.
   a bronze b wood c silver d gold
3. The mask has _____ lines between gold lines.
   a blue b green c black d white
4. There is a _____ on the top of his head.
   a crocodile b bird c snake d cat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. To _____ is to do a job to help others without money.
   a organize b volunteer c respect d control
2. I wear a _____ when I play with my skateboard to protect my legs.
   a knee pads b sunglasses c shorts d watches
3. The _____ is the time and place where a story happens.
   a moral b setting c ending d character

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:
اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

donated - pictures - sad - rooms

My little brother was sick last month, and he was at the hospital. When I visited him, he was ❶ _____ because he didn't like to be there. I thought to do something for children who are sick. I painted lots of big ❷ _____ of flowers, animals and trees. Our parents ❸ _____ lots of toys, too. The hospital looks nice now.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

It's important to **protect** animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food and look after their babies. They are a part of our planet. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. When a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays. This is good for the country and people, too.

Choose the correct answer from a,b,c,or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about _____.
   a animal habitats b sports c pollution d warm weather
2. The underlined word "**protect**" is the opposite of _____.
   a save b damage c old d huge

Answer the following questions:

3. What happens if a habitat is healthy?

   _____

4. Mention different habitats in Egypt.

   _____

5. What do animals need to live?

   _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. do - **What** - decided to - does - Peter ? _____
2. in - very - popular - are - Egypt - **Cats**. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They studied _____ (**good**) for the exam.
2. We _____ (**walk**) in the forest when we found a cat.

7 Punctuate the following sentence: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i can go on wild watching vacation

   _____

2. how about this one

   _____

8 Write an email of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

About your "**favorite game**". Your email address is mirna@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is fareeda@yahoo.com.

Guiding phrases

video games - be creative

New Message

To ..... **Cc** **Bcc**

From .....

Subject .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

9 محافظة البحيرة
إدارة شبراخيت التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Amira lives on the _____.
   a village b coast c roof d desert
2. She enjoys _____ her boat.
   a selling b watching c diving d sailing
3. She found a _____ in a bottle.
   a text b message c moral d toy
4. She was _____ when she read it.
   a sad b tired c bored d surprised

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Omar _____ cats. He loves them very much.
   a kills b eats c adores d sleeps
2. I _____ some money to poor people.
   a donate b walk c play d sing
3. My uncle is a _____. He looks after sheep.
   a teacher b engineer c dentist d shepherd

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

makes - marbles - figures - sister

Sara has a box of toys. She loves playing with her toys. She has some action ❶ _____. She ❷ _____ up lot of games for them. She always plays with her ❸ _____. They have a great time together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last June, my parents took me to Alexandria. We went there in my father's car. We went to lots of restaurants and had a lot of fun. We also went to Alexandria Library. **It** was really cool. I learned a lot about the history of Alexandria there. We swam in the sea, but the water was cold. We had a really happy time in Alexandria. I can't wait to go back some day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The family went to Alexandria in the _____.
   a summer b spring c winter d fall
2. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to Alexandria _____.
   a Café b Hospital c Library d Restaurant

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How did the family travel to Alexandria?

   _____

4. What did they learn there?

   _____

5. Where did they swim?

   _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. quite - football - is - **Islam** - at - good. _____

2. our - help - community - should - **We**. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You mustn't _____ (**scaring**) birds.

2. Mona _____ (**were**) baking a cake yesterday morning.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. Emad and i don t like playing marbles.

_____

2. did he like his toys

_____

8 Write a text of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your visit to the museum

Guiding phrases

artifacts and statues - gold and jewelry

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

10 محافظة الإسكندرية

إدارة شرق التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. Nesma had a _____ weekend.
   a horrible b sad c nice d bad
2. She went to the park with her _____.
   a family b teacher c aunt d cousins
3. They went on a _____ ride.
   a bike b horse c boat d camel
4. They ate delicious _____.
   a cakes b sandwiches c meat d fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hot dry weather help _____ the artifacts.
   a preserve b destroy c listen d hear
2. A _____ person tries hard not to make mistakes.
   a careless b modern c large d careful
3. Many birds _____ to find warmer weather in winter.
   a respect b close c migrate d run

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

metal - museum - safe - Egyptian

Last week, Ali and Hany went to the museum in the city. There were a lot of interesting artifacts to see. They were surprised to find a room that had lots of animal statues. They know that animals were very important in the the ancient ❶ _____ culture. They saw snakes made of ❷ _____. There were also lots of cats because the ancient Egyptians believed that cats kept them ❸ _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Mark. I'm from France. I spent my holiday in Egypt with my family. It's an amazing country. We visited many historical places in Luxor, Aswan, Giza and Cairo. We went to different markets. We also went snorkeling in the Red Sea. In addition, we went on a desert safari and climbed on mountains. We enjoyed seeing different **species** of birds. A lot of tourists come to watch birds which travel to Egypt in winter. We were careful not to get too close to the birds because they might fly away. So we watched them from a safe distance.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is _____.

a Mark's job b old Egypt c Mark's toys d Mark's visit to Egypt

2. The underlined word "**species**" means _____.

a kinds b clocks c buttons d accommodations

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why do people keep a distance while watching birds?

_____

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

_____

5. Where's Mark from?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. leave - **You** - trash - beaches - on - mustn't. _____

2. many - types - **There** - are - of - habitats. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I finished _____ (**do**) my homework.

2. Where did you _____ (**bought**) vegetables?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. rahma lived in a small village

_____

2. why is eco-tourism a good idea

_____

8 Write a paragraph of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Toys and games

Guiding phrases

old rollerblades - an action figure

محافظة الإسماعيلية 11

إدارة القصاصين التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع و ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

1. Next _____ Nadia is going on a tour.
   a day b week c month d night
2. They are going to see birds and animals which live near the _____.
   a trees b desert c sky d water
3. They are traveling along the river in small _____.
   a cars b boats c planes d trains
4. They will bring their _____.
   a clothes b umbrellas c hats d cameras

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. To "_____" means to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time.
   a adore b mummify c succeed d keep
2. My granddad is a good _____. He tells us fine stories.
   a narrator b doctor c cook d player
3. Your news is always _____. It happens and is true.
   a unreal b real c wrong d false

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

preserve - climate - durable - sink

I went to the Museum of Ancient History last week. I met some students who are at Egyptian Eagles Primary School. I learned about Ancient Egyptians artifacts. The ❶ _____ is hot and dry in Egypt. That's why many artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to ❷ _____ the artifacts. I knew that the Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and ❸ _____ stone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

This is a story of Heba and her grandparents. They lived by the sea. There was a beach near their house. It was **quiet** and beautiful and she loved to go there with her grandparents. They did a lot of activities there. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Heba saw a glass bottle in the water. Her grandpa took it, wrote a message on a piece of paper. Then, he folded the paper. Finally, he put the paper in the bottle and threw it out to sea for someone else to find.

A-choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Heba saw a _____ bottle when she was swimming in the sea.

a metal b plastic c glass d glasses

2. The word "**quiet**" is the opposite of _____.

a calm b noisy c busy d hard

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What activities did they do at the beach?

_____

4. Why did grandpa throw the bottle in the sea?

_____

5. Where did Heba's grandparents live?

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. did - use - you - **What** - materials - other? _____

2. can - see - flocks - birds - of - **You** - there. _____

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

threw - game - glass - surfed

The beach near our house was quiet and beautiful. I loved to go there with my parents. We swam, ① _____ and played games on the sand. One day, we were swimming when I saw a ② _____ bottle in the water. "Look, dad" I said. "Let's put it in the trash." "I have a better idea" said dad. "Let's write a message in a bottle". "That's fun" I said. I wrote the message. The next day, I ③ _____ it into the sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Amira. Last week, my brother and I went shopping with my parents. I saw a shop that sold toys for children. A man showed me a train set moved. The toys were amazing. My dad liked the train set but my sister liked the cuddly toy. My dad bought them to us. I was very happy because I like playing with toys. We love our parents and respect them.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. Amira went shopping _____.

a yesterday b last month c a year ago d last week

2. A man showed Amira a _____.

a train set b car c bus d bike

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did Amira's sister like?

_____

4. Why was Amira happy?

_____

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

_____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. Did - a - weekend - have - nice - you? _____

2. mom - My - a - architect - is - famous. _____

6 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There is no food in the kitchen _____ (**quite**).
2. He must _____ (**is**) careful when he crosses the street.

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. peter worked as a shepherd

_____

2. what things did you do there

_____

8 Write a paragraph of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

"Going shopping"

Guiding phrases

clothes and shoes - amazing and cheap

_____

_____

_____

_____

20 محافظة الوادى الجديد

إدارة الداخلة التعليمية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكراسة

1. I went to the Museum of Ancient _____.
   a Art b History c Music d World
2. The museum was full of Ancient Egyptian _____.
   a artifacts b people c books d buildings
3. Mr Ashraf was our _____ at the museum.
   a manager b doctor c teacher d guide
4. We _____ our visit to the museum.
   a enjoyed b forgot c wrote d read

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. _____ are homes for birds.
   a Cars b Tents c Nests d Boats
2. We should _____ our friends and help them.
   a support b shout c fight d scare
3. The king lived in a big _____ with a large garden.
   a ship b cave c castle d boat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

green - reading - sailing - come

My name is Maria. I live in London. I live on the coast. I love ❶_____ my boat. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes and the color ❷_____. I enjoy ❸_____ short stories.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Tarek. I live in Luxor. My father works with computers. He teaches me how to use computers. I like to play video games with my friends, but I like outdoor games most. My mother is a teacher. My parents never work on the weekend. We often go outside.

I like to play games with my cousins and my friends at the park. My favorite game is hide and seek. We run fast and try to hide. Sometimes, we draw squares to play hopscotch. My cousin, Amr is **really** good at skipping. It's very interesting, but it's difficult, too. You have to practice a lot. We really enjoy our time together.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b,c or d:

1. The underlined word "**really**" means _____.
   a little b small c very d tiny
2. The writer's mother is a/an _____.
   a engineer b teacher c doctor d vet

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the family do on the weekend?
   _____
4. Where do Tarek and his friends play games?
   _____
5. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
   _____

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. did - message - **How** - the - find - they?

2. university - the - is - studying - **She** - at.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The calendar is next _____ (**of**) the poster.

2. You _____ (**must**) leave the trash in the park.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i love visiting the zoo

2. What pets are popular in egypt

8 Write a paragraph of fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Metals in Ancient Egypt

Guiding words

iron - gold

21 الأزهر الشريف
منطقة الغربية الازهرية

1 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

took - family - went - have - go

Mona : Hi Nadia! Did you ❶ _____ a nice weekend?

Nadia : Hello Mona! Yes, I had. I ❷ _____ to Al-Azhar Park.

Mona : Who did you ❸ _____ with?

Nadia : I went with my ❹ _____.

Mona : What did you do there?

Nadia : We played in the park and ❺ _____ many pictures. It was great!

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:
اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

1	hot	cold	with	dry	_____
2	became	feed	kept	grew	_____
3	and	but	because	paper	_____
4	eagle	falcon	train	swift	_____
5	sing	visiting	writing	reading	_____

3 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This ring is expensive. It is made of _____.

a clay b glass c gold

2. _____ you at school yesterday?

a Were b Was c Did

3. My sister and I played with a _____'s house

a dull b doll c dug

4. I prefer _____ books to watching TV.

a reading b to read c read

5. She doesn't like playing tennis _____.

a quite b really c at all

6. Mom _____ dinner when my father came home.

a was cooking b cooking c cooks

7. The _____ is the person who tells you a story.

a setting b narrator c ending

8. The boy hid _____ the door.

a in b under c behind

9. A _____ person tries hard not to make mistakes.

a careful b careless c lazy

10. We _____ swim because there may be a crocodile.

a should b mustn't c must

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Huda wants to build a birdhouse. She gets some wood. She gets some nails and paint. Her mom helps, too. She gets a saw and a hammer. She cuts some wood and fixes them together. Huda uses her pencil and ruler and draws her birdhouse. Huda and her mother build **it** together. Then, they hang it up in a tree. A bird goes into the birdhouse. A second bird goes in. A third bird goes in. A fourth bird goes in! Huda and her mom look at each other. A lot of birds go in the birdhouse so they need a bigger one.

A: Answer the following questions:

1. What does Huda's mom get?

_____

2. Where do they put the birdhouse?

_____

3. Why do they need a bigger house?

_____

B: Choose the correct answer:

4. _____ birds go in the birdhouse.

a Three b Four c Five d Six

5. The underlined word "it" refers to _____.

a the bird b the birdhouse c the pencil d the wood

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. a - bought - They - car - new.

2. was - My - toy - a train set - favorite.

3. football - think - I - so - is - exciting.

4. a pair - There - shoes - is - brown - of.

5. get - you - up - Why - late - did?

6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمس جمل عن:

"A visit to the pyramids"

Guiding words

last week - my friends - camels - tourists - happy

22 منصة الاختبارات الإلكترونية
لأبنائنا فى الخارج

1 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Old people have _____ and this helps them make good decisions.
   a gardens b wisdom c flats d style
2. Sandy was happy when her wish _____.
   a came true b fell over c ran away d turned into
3. My little sister always takes her favorite _____ toy to her bed.
   a book b candy c skateboard d cuddly
4. I always wear a _____ when I ride my bike to protect my head.
   a belt b ball c helmet d jacket
5. I read a _____ of the new movie before deciding to watch it.
   a menu b review c meal d market
6. The shepherd looks _____ sheep.
   a into b out c after d up
7. People can go _____ in the Red Sea.
   a jumping b running c snorkeling d watching
8. In Egypt, there are many _____ places to visit.
   a historical b environmental c electrical d harmful
9. We use _____ bags of shopping to protect the environment.
   a badly b eco-friendly c harmful d soft
10. Shady was angry because he couldn't _____ part in the football match.
    a train b take c decide d support
11. You _____ walk to the school today because there are no buses.
    a mustn't b shouldn't c must d couldn't
12. We were playing in the park when it _____ to rain.
    a start b starts c starting d started

13. What _____ you doing at 9 am yesterday?

a is b was c were d are

14. There is no food in the kitchen _____.

a at all b so c very d quite

15. The boy is hiding _____ the tree. I can't see him.

a behind b in front of c between d on

16. Yesterday, Ahmed didn't _____ to school.

a came b comes c come d coming

17. My family and I _____ in Assuit when I was young.

a are living b live c lives d lived

18. Why _____ you finish your math homework last week?

a don't b didn't c wasn't d weren't

19. We _____ to the museum two days ago.

a went b go c gone d going

20. She played the piano very _____.

a bad b well c good d slow

23 امتحان الدمج

محافظة القاهرة

إدارة حلوان التعليمية

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My favorite _____ is my skateboard.

a toy b sport c house d subject

2. The boys like playing _____ and seek.

a hide b marble c draw d fall

3. A/an _____ is a person who looks after sheep.

a doctor b shepherd c nurse d journalist

4. You must be _____ in the natural environment.

a harmful b careful c careless d helpless

5. We shouldn't _____ down trees.

a eat b drop c cut d plant

6. I go to school _____ learn.

a for b to c in d by

7. He can speak English _____.

a happy b well c quiet d sad

8. We _____ to the market yesterday.

a go b goes c going d went

9. What is he _____?

a play b plays c playing d played

10. You _____ respect your parents?

a can't b mustn't c must d are

2 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Sara .I live in Cairo .I visited my grandma last Friday .I found a box of my old toys at her house .There was an action figure .When I was little, my favorite toy was a train set. My sister had a big doll's house .We both played with it .I found my rollerblades, too .I wanted to have a go with them but they were too small .I was excited and happy to see my old toys again.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about _____.

a toys b email c letters d animals

2. Sara lives in _____.

a Tanta b Giza c Cairo d Aswan

3. Sara visited grandma last _____.

a Monday b Friday c Sunday d Tuesday

4. Her favorite toy was a _____.

a train set b skateboard c bike d marble

3 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. was - Ali - his – doing - homework.
   - a Ali was homework doing his .
   - b Ali was doing his homework .
   - c Ali doing was his homework.

2. is favorite My -my skateboard-toy.
   - a My favorite skateboard is my toy.
   - b My favorite toy is my skateboard .
   - c My favorite toy skateboard is my .

4 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

a He went to hospital.	1- ( )
b He had a cold.	2- ( )
c Tamer was sick yesterday.	3- ( )
d The doctor gave him some medicine.	4- ( )

5 Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

a- I m a doctor. b- I'm a doctor c- I'm a doctor.

Question 1	Mark	Marker	Reviser
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات الخاصة باختبارات الشهور

March Test 1 on Units 7-8

Ali is a good boy, he loves his toys very much. Ali's favorite toy is a train set. He likes to play with it. His brother Adel likes to play with his skateboard. Adel loves going to the park and playing with his friends. Adel has to wear a helmet when he plays with his skateboard.

March Test 2 on Units 7-8

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. The king took it to his castle. He gave it food and a warm bed.

April Test 1 on Units 9-10

Next week, Heba is going on a tour in Luxor. She is going with her friends. They are going to see birds and animals. They are traveling in small boats. They will bring their cameras to take photos.

April Test 2 on Units 9-10

Ali and I were playing in the park yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shinning. We were walking along the road. We saw a little house in the distance.

General Tests

Test 1

محافظة القاهرة/ إدارة الزاوية التعليمية

- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Cats are my favorite animals. Cats have soft fur. Cats are usually scared. Cats are popular pets around the world. Cats have sharp teeth and claws.

Test 2

محافظة الجيزة/ إدارة منشأة القناطر التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Next week, Noura and her family are going on a vacation. They will travel along the river in a small boat. They will camp in tents at night. Noura and her family hope to see lizards and turtles.

Test 3

محافظة القليوبية/ إدارة طوخ التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

I love playing with my old toys. I made up lots of clothes for my action figures. I didn't have a train set. My sister had a big cuddly toy.

Test 4

محافظة المنوفية/ إدارة السادات التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Next week, Nadia is going on a tour. They are going to see birds and animals which live near the water. They are traveling along the river in small boats. They bring their cameras to take photos.

Test 5

محافظة الشرقية/ إدارة ديرب نجم التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Ahmed is in grade six. He went to the museum last week. He met a tourist in the museum. There are a lot of artifacts made of gold.

Test 6

محافظة الغربية/ إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

The Ancient Egyptians loved cats so much. They believed that cats keep them safe. Farmers produce a lot of grains. The rats eat the grains. The cats eat rats. They help farmers.

Test 7

محافظة الدقهلية/ إدارة ميت غمر التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. You learn how to socialize and talk to people.

Test 8

محافظة كفر الشيخ/ إدارة دسوق التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

One of the most beautiful artifacts from ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask. Tutankamun's mask is made of gold. The mask has blue lines between gold lines. There is a snake on the top of his head.

Test 9

محافظة البحيرة/ إدارة شبراخيت التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Amira lives in Port Said. She lives on the coast. She enjoys sailing her boat. She found a message in a bottle. She was surprised when she read it.

Test 10

محافظة الإسكندرية/ إدارة شرق التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Nesma had a nice weekend. She went to the park with her family. They went on a boat ride. They ate delicious sandwiches.

Test 11

محافظة الإسماعيلية/ إدارة القصاصين التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Next week, Nadia is going on a tour. She is going with her family. They are going to see birds and animals which live near the water. They are traveling along the river in small boats. They will bring their cameras to take photos.

Test 12

محافظة بورسعيد/ إدارة بورسعيد التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

We started a project called community help at school. We had to choose something to support other people in our community. Some people wanted to start a vegetable garden. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the school.

Test 13

محافظة مطروح/ إدارة مطروح التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean up.

Test 14

محافظة بنى سويف/ إدارة ناصر التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

You should be polite and kind to your neighbors. You can volunteer at local charities. Volunteering is interesting. You can reduce waste and help the environment.

Test 15

محافظة أسيوط/ إدارة أبنوب التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Ali visited his aunt yesterday. He went by car. He had a glass of water. Ali and his cousin played hide and seek.

Test 16

محافظة سوهاج/ إدارة أخميم التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

My favorite toy was a skateboard. I got my first skateboard when I was seven. I love going to the park and playing there. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads.

Test 17

محافظة قنا/ إدارة قوص التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt. It's good for everybody if we protect these habitats. We mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper so people don't cut down trees.

Test 18

محافظة الأقصر/ إدارة الأقصر التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

People use the laptop to play games or watch movies. You can use the laptop to find information on the internet. You can write essays and do your homework on the laptop. You can't take a photocopy with the laptop.

Test 19

محافظة البحر الاحمر/ إدارة الغردقة التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

Fareeda has two sisters. She stayed in her old apartment for about twelve years. Fareeda shares a room with her sister. The balcony is fantastic.

Test 20

محافظة الوادى الجديد/ إدارة الداخلة التعليمية

- Listen and circle the correct answer:

I went to the Museum of Ancient History last week. The museum is full of Ancient Egyptian artifacts. Mr Ashraf was our guide at the museum. We enjoyed our visit to the museum.